

Н. И. Лисицина

**ГРАММАТИКА
АНГЛИЙСКОГО ЯЗЫКА**

МОДАЛЬНЫЕ ГЛАГОЛЫ

УЧЕБНОЕ ПОСОБИЕ

**Федеральное агентство по образованию
Государственное образовательное учреждение
высшего профессионального образования
«ТОМСКИЙ ГОСУДАРСТВЕННЫЙ ПЕДАГОГИЧЕСКИЙ
УНИВЕРСИТЕТ»**

Н. И. Лисицина

**ГРАММАТИКА
АНГЛИЙСКОГО ЯЗЫКА**

МОДАЛЬНЫЕ ГЛАГОЛЫ

УЧЕБНОЕ ПОСОБИЕ

ТОМСК 2009

УДК 802.0:801.541.45(075.8)
ББК 81.432.1-923.2
Г 76

Печатается по разрешению
редакционно-издательского совета
Томского государственного
педагогического университета

Г 76 Грамматика английского языка. Модальные глаголы : учебное пособие / Автор-составитель : Лисицина Н. И. ; ГОУ ВПО Томский государственный педагогический университет. – Томск : Изд-во ТГПУ, 2009. – с.

Учебное пособие предназначено для студентов II и III курсов очного и заочного отделений факультета иностранных языков педагогических ВУЗов, изучающих иностранный язык в качестве основной либо дополнительной специальности.

Пособие включает подробное описание правил функционирования модальных глаголов в современном английском языке и комплекс разнообразных упражнений, которые дают практический материал для усвоения этой темы.

Рецензенты: К. филол. н., доцент, заведующий кафедрой
английского языка ФИЯ ТГПУ Л. А. Петроченко

Доцент кафедры лингвистики и переводоведения
института языковой коммуникации Томского
политехнического университета И. В. Смагина

К. филол. н., доцент кафедры английской филологии
факультета иностранных языков Томского
Государственного университета И. Г. Темникова

© Томский государственный
педагогический университет, 2009

© Н. И. Лисицина, 2009

ПРЕДИСЛОВИЕ

Учебное пособие «Грамматика английского языка. Модальные глаголы» написано в соответствии с Программой по грамматике английского языка для педагогических вузов и включает раздел, посвященный употреблению модальных глаголов в английском языке. Пособие предназначено для студентов II и III курсов очного и заочного отделений факультета иностранных языков педагогических вузов, изучающих иностранный язык в качестве основной либо дополнительной специальности. Содержание пособия соответствует ГОСу специальности 033200 «Иностранный язык».

В учебном пособии рассматривается употребление модальных глаголов. Во время общения, собеседники не только обмениваются информацией, но также высказывают свое отношение к тому, о чем говорят. Одним из средств, с помощью которых говорящий выражает свое отношение к действию или состоянию, являются модальные глаголы. Они обозначают возможность, вероятность, предположение, неуверенность, пожелание, распоряжение и т. д. Эти глаголы составляют особую, хотя и малочисленную в семантико-синтаксическом отношении, группу. Сложность употребления модальных глаголов состоит и в том, что одно и то же значение может быть передано разными глаголами. Именно многофункциональность модальных глаголов и разнообразие оттенков значений вызывают у обучаемых значительные затруднения в приобретении практических навыков в использовании этих глаголов в речи.

Основной целью данного пособия является совершенствование грамматического аспекта речевой деятельности студентов на материале модальных глаголов, а также выработка автоматизированного навыка употребления различных моделей, основанных на многообразии случаев употребления модальных глаголов в современном английском языке. Пособие включает лингвистическую информацию об особенностях употребления модальных глаголов и комплекс разнообразных упражнений от тренировочных до условно-речевых, которые составлены на основе современных отечественных и зарубежных методик. Упражнения направлены на формирование навыков корректного владения модальными глаголами. Материал пособия организован по этапам, соответствующим программному обучению модальных глаголов; описывается употребление модальных глаголов в различных функциях, при этом особое внимание уделяется сходству и различию глаголов, употребляемых в одной и той же функции.

Пособие содержит раздел Revision Exercises, упражнения которого носят контролирующий характер и могут быть использованы на разных этапах в качестве заданий для самостоятельной работы. Лексической базой упражнений является нейтрально-бытовая лексика, характерная для устной речи. К большинству упражнений предлагаются ответы-ключи.

Modal Verbs

Modal verbs, unlike other verbs, do not denote actions or states, but only show the attitude of the speaker towards the action expressed by the infinitive. Thus they may show that the action (or state, or process) is considered by the speaker as possible, impossible, probable, improbable, obligatory, necessary, advisable, doubtful, certain, prohibited, ordered, etc. *Modal verbs* occur only with the infinitive.

There are twelve modal verbs in English. They are: ***can, may, must, should, ought to, to have to (to have got to), to be to, need, shall, will, would, dare.***

Ten of them (that is all but **to be to** and **to have to**) are also called defective or anomalous verbs as they lack some features characteristic of other verbs:

1. they do not take **-s** in the third person singular;
 2. they have no verbals, and they have no analytical forms (i.e. compound tenses, the Passive Voice);
 3. they have (except for *can* and *may*) only one form and no past tense;
 4. they are followed (except for *ought*) by a bare infinitive (that is by the infinitive without the particle *to*);
 5. they need no auxiliary to build up the interrogative and negative forms.
 6. We never use two modal verbs together. For example, you cannot say '~~He will can come.~~' Instead you can say '**He will be able to come.**'
- Your husband **might have to give up** work. – Твоему мужу, **возможно, придется** оставить работу.

Modal verbs have two negative forms, full and contracted:

full form	contracted form
cannot	can't
must not	mustn't
will not	won't
would not	wouldn't
should not	shouldn't
ought not to	oughtn't to
shall not	shan't
need not	needn't
dare not	daren't

(Модальные глаголы являются одним из средств выражения модальности в английском языке. Эти глаголы обозначают не конкретные действия, а выражают лишь отношение говорящего к действию. С помощью модальных глаголов говорящий показывает, что он считает то или иное действие возможным, невозможным, вероятным, необходимым, желательным и т. д. Поэтому модальные глаголы не употребляются самостоятельно, а только в сочетании с инфинитивом смыслового глагола.

Сравните:

- He is swimming in the lake. - Он плавает в озере сейчас. (Форма *Present Continuous* выражает конкретное действие.)
- He can swim. - Он умеет плавать. (Здесь говорящий сообщает об умении кого-то плавать.)

К модальным глаголам относятся *can, may, must, should, would, ought to*. Модальные значения могут быть выражены глаголами *to be to, to have to, shall* и *will*. Глаголы *shall* и *will*, выражая модальное значение намерения, обещания и т. д., выполняют одновременно свою функцию вспомогательного глагола для образования будущего времени. К модальным глаголам также можно отнести глаголы *need, dare* и оборот *used to*. Эти глаголы, обладая модальным значением, могут функционировать в языке как смысловые, полнозначные глаголы, что позволяет назвать их полумодальными глаголами (*semi-modals*).

Модальные глаголы отличаются от других глаголов не только своим значением, но и системой грамматических форм. Модальные глаголы являются недостаточными, дефектными глаголами (*defective verbs*). У них отсутствует ряд грамматических форм, которые имеют другие глаголы.)

Summary of Functions of Modal Verbs

1. Ability: *can; could; to be able to*

- He can speak Japanese. She can dance well
- He could/was able to speak Japanese when she was young. (repeated action – ability in the past)
- She is able to make people laugh. She is able to type 120 words per minute
- We were able to go on a three-month tour of Australia. (single action in the past)

2. Permission

■ Asking for permission:

- **Can I/ Could I/ May I/ Might I** = Do you mind if.../Would you mind if...?
- Can I borrow your pencil? – Of course/Of course, you can/Of course, you may/I'm afraid not./I'd rather you didn't/I'm afraid you can't because... (a polite refusal)/No, you can't/No, you may not.
- Could I be excused? (more polite than with **can**)
- May I use your phone? (= Will you allow me to use your phone?) – Certainly. /Of course/Why not? /No, I'm afraid you can't.
- Might I have the pleasure of your company? (very formal; asking for permission)

■ Giving permission:

- **can/may** = you are allowed to do something
- You can borrow that pen if you want to. (informal)
- You may ask for information here. (formal; giving permission)

- **Could I speak** to the manager? –Yes, you **can**. /Yes, you **may**. (*not*: Yes, you **could**.)
- **Refusing permission:**
 - **can't/may not/mustn't** = you are not allowed to do something
- I'm sorry but you **can't/mustn't park** your car here. (informal; refusing permission; prohibition)
- Visitors **may not enter** the laboratories. (formal; written notice)
- Could I go through these files? – I'm sorry, but you **can't**. (*not*: I'm sorry, but you **couldn't**.)
- Guests **may not smoke** in their rooms. (formal; refusing permission – written notice)
- Visitors **may not take** pictures of the statues. (formal; refusing permission – written notice)
- I'm sorry, but you **can't/mustn't make** long distance phone calls. (informal; refusing permission)
- He **wasn't allowed to/couldn't take** my car. (refusing permission)
- **Talking about permission:**
 - **can/can't/could/couldn't/are (not) allowed to/was (not) allowed to**
- Passengers **can smoke /are allowed to smoke** in the lounge. (regulation)
- He **was allowed to** take my car. (*not*: **could**)
- I **could/was allowed to** return home after 11 o'clock at night when I was young. (I was allowed to return home late in general.)
- **But: I was allowed to watch** TV until very late last night. (*not*: I **could** watch... as this is a particular situation.)
- **May I use** your fax machine? (= Will you allow me to use your fax machine?)
- **Are we allowed to** use the photocopier? (= What is the rule?)

3. Possibility; supposition implying doubt, uncertainty:

- **can; may/might/could**
- The streets **can get** very slippery when it rains. (general possibility)
- If it gets colder tomorrow, it **may/might/could snow**. (= 'it is possible', 'perhaps', 'maybe', 'it is likely') (*возможно, может быть*)
- He **may/might/could be** tired. (= it's possible he is tired)
- He **may/might not come** later. (= perhaps, he won't come later) (*возможно не, может быть не*)
- He **may/might/could have sold** his house. (= perhaps/maybe he sold it) (past reference)
- They **may/might/could have changed** their minds. (= It is possible that they changed their minds.)
- Never allow your children to play with pot and pans on the stove. They **could/might scald** themselves. (= it is possible that something will happen)

- Bob drove very carelessly yesterday. He **could/might have met** with an accident. (= it was possible in the past but luckily didn't happen) (past reference)
- Why did he stay at a hotel in New York? He **could have stayed** with Linda. (He had the ability or opportunity to stay with Linda in the past but did not do it. - **missed opportunity**)
- It **is likely that** Ann will offer to help.
- Ann **is likely to offer** to help.
- It **was likely that** she had missed the bus.
- She **was likely to have missed** the bus.

Note: to express possibility in questions we use:

- **Is he likely to ... ; Is it likely that he ... ?**
- **Can he ... ? Could he ... ? Might he ... ?** (Not: ~~may~~)
- **Could he still be at work? Is he likely to offer to help?**

4. Probability: **should; ought to**

- He **should come** later. (90% certain; it's probable)
- They **ought to be** in Canada by now.
- He **ought to have reached** Rome by now. (He has probably reached Rome.)
- They **should have started** the course by now. (They have probably started the course by now.)

5. Supposition bordering on assurance, almost a conviction, probability; logical assumption/deduction:

must; can't/couldn't (должно быть, вероятно, наверняка, вряд ли, по всей вероятности)

- **must** = I'm sure/I'm certain/I have no doubt that something is true (*positive*)
- **can't/couldn't** = I'm sure/I'm certain/I have no doubt/I don't think that something is true (*negative*)
- **must** (= supposition) = **probably, evidently**
- He **must be tired**. (95% certain – positive; I'm sure he **is tired**)
- He **must have arrived** by now. (positive; I'm sure he **has arrived**)
- She **can't/couldn't be serious**. (negative; I'm sure she **isn't** serious)
- She **can't/couldn't have gone** to the party. (negative; I'm sure she **didn't go** to the party)
- You **must be joking!**

6. Surprise; disbelief; incredulity; doubt, improbability: **can/could**

(неужели ...?; может ли быть ... ?; разве ...? не может быть; чтобы ...; вряд ли (это так); невероятно...)

- **Can he know it?** Неужели он знает это?

- **Can he still be working?** Неужели он все еще работает?
- **Could he have known** her before? Неужели он знал ее прежде.
- **She couldn't have done it**; she is such a nice woman. Не может быть, чтобы она сделала это; она такая славная женщина
- **He can't have been translating** the article for two hours. Не может быть, чтобы он переводил эту статью два часа.
- **She can't have misunderstood** you.

7. Necessity: *must; have to; have got to; to be to*

- All applicants **must take** an entrance exam.
- All applicants **have to take** an entrance exam. ('must' and 'have to' both express necessity. = It is necessary for every applicant to take an entrance exam. There is no other choice. The exam is required.)
- **I must return** these books soon. (the speaker decides that it is necessary; 'must' gives a strong personal opinion); **I had to return** the books to the library. (= I was obliged to return them; past reference)
- I'm looking for Ann. I **have to talk** to her about our lunch date tomorrow. (In everyday statements of necessity 'have to' is used more commonly than 'must'. The speaker is simply saying, "I need to do this".)
- **They've got to sell** their caravan. ('have got to' is informal) **They had to sell** their caravan.
- **I have to/have got to/must study** tonight. (present or future reference); **I had to study** last night. (past reference)
- **Do I have to do** my homework now? (= Is it necessary for me to do my homework now?)
- **My brother needs to go** to the library to get some information.
- **He needs my help.**
- **The plants need watering./The plants need to be watered.** (It is necessary)
- **We are to complete** this work tomorrow.

8. Absence of necessity: *have to; need*

- **You don't have to water** the flowers./**You don't need to water** the flowers./**You needn't water** the flowers. (= It isn't necessary to water the flowers.) (present or future reference)
- **He didn't have to stay** in a hotel. (= It wasn't necessary for him to stay in a hotel and he didn't) (past reference)
- **He didn't need to stay** in a hotel. (= It wasn't necessary for him to stay in a hotel. We don't know whether he stayed or not.) (past reference)
- **You needn't have called** Tom. I spoke to him this morning. (= It wasn't necessary to call him, but you did.) Ты зря позвонил Тому.

9. Obligation: *must; to have to; ought to; to be to*

- **I must get** more exercise. (I need to; I say so)

- **Must you really go** so soon? – **No, I needn't.**
- **I have to get** more exercise. (I'm obliged to; the doctor says so.)
- **I had to get** more exercise because I was unfit.
- **We ought to give** more money to charity. (It's the right thing to do, but we don't always do it.) (present or future reference)
- **We ought to have given** more money to charity. (It was the right thing to do but we didn't do it.) (past reference)
- We **were to discuss** it last week. (and we did)
- She **was to have graduated** in June but unfortunately fell ill.

10. Duty: *must; should; ought to*

- **All applicants must fill in** this form. All applicants **had to fill in** that form. (past)
- **Shop assistants should be polite** to the customers.
- **You should have done** the shopping. (but you didn't)
- **People ought to live** in peace. (It's the right thing to do, but people don't always do it.) (present or future reference)
- **She ought to have treated** us more fairly. (It was the right thing to do, but she didn't do it.) (past reference)

11. Prohibition: *mustn't; cannot/can't; may not; shall* (refusing permission)

- You **can't cross** the street here. (= you are not allowed to cross.) Здесь **нельзя** переходить улицу.
- Can I park my car in front of this gate. – No, I'm afraid you **can't**. (= it is not allowed to park a car; parking a car is not allowed)
- You **couldn't enter** this area. (= you **weren't allowed**)
- You **may not talk** during the test. (formal)
- You **mustn't walk** on the grass. (= **it is forbidden/prohibited** to walk on the grass; **you are forbidden** to walk .../**you are not allowed** to walk ...; **it is against the rules/laws**) (не должен, нельзя, не разрешается = **do not do this!**; **mustn't** = **it is important that something is not done or does not happen**)
- You **shall not tell** her. I forbid you

11a. A strict prohibition: *to be to*

- You **are not to smoke** in the room.

12. Command, urgent request: *must*

- You **must do** as you are told.
- Guests **must be** out of the building before midnight.

12a. Strict order, formal command or formal instruction: *to be to*

- The medicine **is to be taken** after meals.

12b. Compulsion; strict order: **shall**

- He **shall** go there now. Он **должен** пойти туда сейчас.
- When he comes in, nobody **shall** say a word.

12c. Order, rules: **will**

- You **will** all **stay** behind for thirty minutes and clean the room.
- The judge's decision **will be** final.

13. Formal instruction, especially in official documents: **shall; will**

- The secretary **shall minute** (вести) the proceedings (протоколы) of each meeting.
- You **will do** exactly as I say.

13a. Asking for instruction: **shall**

- Shall I go on reading?

14. Advice: **should; ought to; had better**

- You **should try to work** harder. (general advice; I advise you; this is a good idea)
- I'm having trouble in maths class. – You **should talk to your teacher**. /Maybe you should talk to your teacher.
- You **should have waited** until seven o'clock. (but you didn't)
- You **ought to keep** to the speed limit. (I advise; most people believe this)
- She **ought to have reserved** a table. (but she didn't)
- You **had better not keep** her waiting. (It's not a good idea; advice on a specific situation)
- It **would have been better if** you hadn't kept her waiting. (but you did)

14a. Asking for advice: **shall**

- Shall I **apply** for the job?
- What **shall I do**? (= What do you suggest I should do?)
- If I were you, I **would apply** for the job.

14b. Emphatic advice: **must**

- You **must do** something about that cough. Please go and see the doctor.

15. Strong recommendation: **must**

- You **really must take** a holiday this year.

15a. Recommendation:

- You **shouldn't miss** the opportunity.
- You **ought to have contacted** a lawyer earlier. (but you **didn't**)

16. Request: **can/could; may/might; will/would** (Polite request)

- **Can I use** your phone? (informal) – Certainly/Yes, certainly/Of course.
- **Can you (please) pass** the salt? ('Can you' is often used informally) – Certainly/Yes, I'd be happy to/ I'd be glad to.
- **Could I use** your phone? (polite) – Of course you **can**./No, you **can't**, I'm afraid.
- **Can/Could you possibly give** me a lift? (still more polite)
- **May I make** a phone call, please? (formal) (we can't use 'may you' in request for help)
- **Might I borrow** your pen? (very formal)
- **Will you give** me a hand? (very friendly; informal)
- **Would you pass** the salt (please)? ('Would you' is more common than 'will you' and is more polite)
- **Will/Would you kindly do** it?
- **Excuse me. Would you mind repeating that?** (polite; formal) (The meaning is: I don't want to cause you any trouble, but would you please repeat that? Would that cause you any inconvenience?)
- **Would you mind if I closed the window?** – No, not at all./Of course not./No, that would be fine. (the meaning is: May I close the window? Is it all right if I close the window?)
- **Would you like to open** the window for me?
- **Would you be so kind as to help** me? (formal)
- **Do you think you could help** me? (Requests may be *hesitant* - колеблющийся; нерешительный, сомневающийся.)
- **Do you think I could/might use** your phone?
- **I wonder if you could look** after my dog while I'm away.
- **I wonder if I could/might use** your phone.

17. Offer:

I'll; Shall/Can/Could

Shall/Can/Could I/we ...? = Would you like me/us to ...?/Do you want me/us to ...?

- **Can/Could I offer** you a sandwich? – *Yes, I'd like one please./Yes, I'd love one please./Yes, please./No, thank you.* ('Could I ...' – more polite)
- **What can I do** for you?
- **Can I help** you?
- **May I take** your coat? (a very polite offer with *may*)
- **Shall I carry** your bag for you? – *That's very kind of you. Thank you./No, thank you.* (= Do you want me to **carry** your bag for you?) (informal)
- What **shall I do** for you?
- **I'll** (= *I'm willing to do something*) (informal)
 - That bag looks heavy. **I'll help** you with it. (**I'll** = I'm willing to help you)
 - That's the phone. **I'll get** it for you, **shall I?** ('I'll' is more informal than 'can I')
- **Won't you have** some more of the pie? (more encouraging)
- **What will you have?**
- **What would you like to have?**

- **Would you like me to help you** with the washing-up?
- **Would you like a lift** to the airport?
- **Would you like to stay** with me for a couple of days?
- **What would you like** to have?
- **What would you prefer?**
- **What would you rather have?**
- **Do you want us to help you** with the cooking?

18. Suggestion:

. **Shall I/we..? = Why don't we...?/Why not/How about...?/What about...? / Let's...**

- . **I/We can/could**
- . **should; would**

- **I/we can always leave** early. (*informal*) (present or future reference)
- What shall we do this evening? – **We could eat out** tonight if you want. (present or future reference)
- **He could have asked** for advice. (past reference)
- **We could have stayed** longer if you had wanted.
- **Couldn't we do** it at the weekend? Не могли бы мы сделать это в конце недели?
- **Shall we go** to the opera on Saturday? – I'd rather not. **We can/could go** to the art exhibition instead.
- **Shall we** have a break?
- **Shall I open the window?** (*informal*) Is that okay with you?
- **What shall we do** with these boxes? – Put them in the kitchen. (= What do you suggest we should do?)
- **Let's go** to the beach. / **Let's stay** at home instead, **shall we?** / **Let's not buy** it. / **Let's go, okay?** / **Let's go, shall we?**
- **What about** going to the beach? / **What about a snack** before going home?
- **How about** going to the beach?
- **What do you say to** going to the beach?
- **Why shouldn't we go** to the beach?
- **Why don't we go** to the beach? / **Why don't we go** on a picnic? / **Why don't I** give Mary a call?
- **Why not go** to the beach?
- **What should we do** tonight? (*informal suggestion*)
- **What would you like to do?** (Typical inquiry with 'What' to invite suggestions)
- **Would you like to go** shopping?

Typical responses: (Yes,) I'd like to. / I'd love to.

(No,) I'd prefer not to, thank you.

... What should we do tomorrow? – Why don't we go on a picnic?/We could go on a picnic.

18a. Suggestion: **You might like.../ You might want...**

- I thought perhaps **you might like to come** along with me.

- You **might** want to try another shop.

19. Reproach: **could/might**

- You **could have phoned** me. Ты **мог бы** мне позвонить. (past reference)
- You **might have met** me at the station. Ты **мог бы** встретить меня на вокзале.

20. Criticism, disapproval, regret: **could; might; should; ought to**

- She **could** at least **wait** until 5 o'clock. (present or future reference)
- You **could have told** me about the party. (=You had the chance to tell me but you didn't.) (past reference)
- You **might have attended** the meeting.
- They **should warn** us.
- They **should have warned** us. (but they didn't)
- You **ought to be** more polite to her.
- You **ought to have been** more polite to her. (It was the right thing to do, but you didn't do it.)

21. Invitation: **must; will; would**

- You **must come** and have dinner with me.
- **Will** you **come** to see me soon?
- **Would** you **like to go** shopping? (Invitation with 'would' is more polite than with 'will')

22. Certainty about the present (100% certainty): **will**

In this meaning 'will' is an equivalent of 'must' (должно быть, по-видимому, очевидно).

- There is a knock at the door. – That **will be** the postman. He always calls at this time (100% certainty). (Cf. That **must be** the postman (95% certainty). = You are fairly sure that this is true.)
- **Certainty about the past.** To refer to something which we feel certain has happened, we use **will have + past participle**:
 - We sent the invitations on Monday, so they **will have received** them by now. Why hasn't anyone replied? (This is similar to **must have + past participle**: We sent the invitations on Monday, so they **must have received** them by now.)
 - We use **won't have + past participle** to refer to something which we feel certain has not happened:
 - We sent the invitations by second-class post. They **won't have received** them yet. (This is similar to **can't have + past participle**: We sent the invitations by second-

class post. They **can't have received** them yet.

23. Decision; volition made at the time of speaking: **will** (We usually contract **will** to **'ll** with this use)

- 'It's Jane's birthday today.' 'Is it? I'll **buy** her some flowers.'
- I'll **have** the steak, please.

24. Prediction: will/won't

- According to statistics, smokers **won't live** as long as non-smokers.
- I imagine the stadium **will be** full for the match on Saturday.

25. Threat or warning: shall; will

- You **shall pay** for this, you **shall**.
- Stop making that noise or I **will scream!** (**will** фактически имеет значение сильного желания, намерения)
- Give it back or we'll **call** the Police!

26. Promise: shall; will

- Don't be afraid, Jane, I saw it was an accident. You **shall not be punished**.
- You **shall do** as you please.
- I promise I **won't tell** anyone what happened.
- I'll **give** you another opportunity to get the correct answer.

27. Persistence; determination; intention; willingness; unwillingness; refusal to do something: **will/would**

- I **will go** with you, I have no choice. Я поеду с вами, у меня нет выбора.
- Don't tell me about it. – But I **will tell** you. Не говорите мне про это. – А я все равно скажу.
- I knocked but they **wouldn't open** the door.
- It's no use trying to open the door, it **won't open**. Нечего стараться открыть эту дверь – она все равно не откроется.

27a. Unwillingness or refusal to do something: **shall**

- Go and buy some milk, will you, love? – No, I **shan't**. I'm busy.
- Drink your milk, Jimmy! – I **shan't**!

28. Characteristic habits, behaviour or quality, repeated actions: will

- In fine weather, he **will often sit** in the sun for hours. *Cf.* In fine weather, he often

sits in the sun for hours.

- This car **will hold** six people comfortably.

28a. Past habits; repeated actions; persistence; willingness; volition: *would; used to*

- When I was a child, my father **would sometimes take** me fishing. Когда я был ребенком, отец, бывало, иногда брал меня на рыбалку.
- She **would often hear** him grumbling. Она часто слышала, как он что-то бормотал.
- When I worked on a farm, I **always used to get up** at 5 a.m.

29. Desire; preference: *I would like to; I would prefer to*

- **I'd like to say** a few words about this problem.
- **I'd prefer to prefer tea to coffee.**
- **Would you like to dance?** – *Yes, I would./ No, thank you./(Yes,) I'd like to. / I'd love to./No, I'd prefer not to, thank you.*

29a. Preference: *I would rather ...*

- We **would rather not stay** at the conference centre. (*present or future reference*)
- I **would rather have stayed** at home. (*past reference*)

30. In conditional sentences after the conjunction 'if': *will/would* (it is actually a polite request.)

- If you **will wait**, I'll see if Mr. Green is free.
- If you **will be more** patient, I'll be with you in a minute.
- If you **would be** frank with me, I might be of more help.
- If you **would write** to me, I will/would answer it at once.

1. Can

Can expresses:

1. Physical or mental ability (способность, возможность делать ч-л) (general ability)

- We use **can, could, to be able to + the Indefinite Infinitive** in affirmative, negative and interrogative sentences
- We use '**can**', to talk about ability in the present and in the future
- We use '**could**' to talk about ability in the past
- We use '**to be able to**' to talk about ability in the present, future and past and for the missing forms of the verb '**can**'
- **Can** is rendered in Russian by: могу, умею, мог, быть в состоянии
 - She **can read** though she is four. (= She knows how to read.)
 - She **can make** people laugh. / She **is able to make** people laugh.
 - I **can't spell** very well.
 - Anyone **can become** a qualified teacher.
 - **Can you write** with your left hand?
 - She's a great driver: she **can drive** almost any car.
 - She **can speak** Spanish but she **can't speak** Italian.
 - I **could swim** when I was five. / I **was able to swim** when I was five. (*repeated action - ability in the past*) Я **умел** плавать, когда мне было 5 лет.
 - We **were able to go** on a three-month tour of Australia. (*single action*) Мы **смогли** съездить ...
 - Dogs **can bark**, but they **cannot (can't) talk**.
 - **Could** Einstein **speak** English when he went to live in the USA?
 - I **could read** before I started school.

Note 1: Depending on the context '**can**' may also refer to the *future*.

- We **can discuss** your paper *tomorrow*
- But if the time reference is not clear from the context or if it is necessary to stress that the action refers to the future, **shall be able / will be able** is used.
 - He **will be able to write** to us from Moscow.

Note 2: We also use '**be able to**', '**not to be able to**', and '**be unable to**' to talk about somebody's ability to do something but '**can**' and '**could**' are more common and less formal. ('**be unable to**' – is more common in formal English)

- She **isn't able to remember** the name of the book. ('isn't able to...' = 'can't')
- **Are you able to speak** English fluently?
- She **was able to tie** her own shoelaces. (*single action*) Она **смогла** завязать свои шнурки.
- Billy is only nine months old and he **can** already **stand up/is already able to stand up**.
- The lawyer **was unable to persuade** the jury of her client's innocence.

- However, **am/is/are able to** would be unusual when we are commenting on something that is happening at the time of speaking:
 - Look! I **can stand** on my hands! (*not*: Look! I ~~**am able to stand**~~ on my hands!)
- If the present ability is surprising or involves overcoming some difficulty, we can also use **is/are able to**:
 - Despite his handicap (увечье) he **is able to drive** a car.
- We cannot usually use **be able to** with a passive:
 - This book **can be used** by computer beginners. (*not*: This book ~~**is able to be used**~~ by computer beginners.)
- To emphasise the difficulty or to suggest a great effort (in present, past or future) we use **manage to**. In formal English we can also use **succeed in + -ing form**:
 - Do you think she'll **manage** to get a visa?
 - The army **succeeded in defeating** their enemy.
- But we use '**was able to**' and '**were able to**' (*not*: ~~**could**~~) to say that someone managed to do something **in a single, particular situation in the past**.
 - Mike's car broke down but fortunately he **was able to repair** it. (...смог отремонтировать ее.) (*not*: Mike's car broke down but fortunately he ~~**could repair**~~ it.)
- We use both '**couldn't**', '**could not**' and '**wasn't able to/weren't able to**', '**was not able to/were not able to**' to describe a lack of ability or success **in a single, particular situation in the past**.
 - Despite being a mechanic, Mike **couldn't fix/wasn't able to fix** his car when it broke down yesterday.

2a. Possibility = general possibility, theoretical possibility. We use **can** to describe things which are *generally* possible (we know they *sometimes* happen; it is possible)

- We use **can, could, to be able to** in affirmative, negative, interrogative sentences + **the Indefinite Infinitive**
- **Can** is rendered in Russian by: **могу, можно, можете**
 - The railways **can be improved**. (= It is possible for the railways to be improved as they are not yet perfect.)
 - Cooking **can be** a real pleasure.
 - Swimming after **eating can be** dangerous.
 - Making mistakes **can be** a good way of learning.
 - Smoking **cannot be** good for you.
 - The sea **can be** rough. (= The sea is **sometimes** rough.) Море иногда бывает бурным.
 - It **can be** quite cold in Cairo in January.
 - Anyone **can learn** to use a word processor. (=It is possible for anyone to learn to use a word processor)
 - I **couldn't go** to the theatre yesterday, I was busy.

- He **could be** very naughty when he was a little boy.
- Uncle Tony **could be** very funny sometimes.
- **Can** we **use** the Indefinite article with this noun?
- When **will he be able to pick** them up?
- In old days a man **could be sentenced** to death for a small crime. В старые времена человека **можно было** приговорить к смерти за небольшое преступление.

Note 1:

- When '**could**' is used with reference to the past, it denotes only **the ability** or **possibility** of performing an action but **not the realization** of the action. If an action **was realized** or **carried out in a particular situation in the past** it is expressed with the help of:

'was able to do smth', 'were able to do smth', 'managed to do smth', 'succeeded in doing smth' (the latter is used in literary style).

- If an action was **not realized in a particular situation in the past** it is expressed with the help of:

'failed to do smth', 'wasn't able to do smth', 'was unable to do smth', 'didn't manage to do smth', 'didn't succeed in doing'.

- However, the negative '**couldn't**' is possible in all situations.

- In his youth he **could swim** across the Volga. Он **мог** (был способен) переплыть Волгу в юности.
- *But:* He **was able to swim** (= **managed to swim**) across the Volga **last year**. Он **смог** переплыть Волгу в прошлом году.
- *Also in:* He **couldn't swim** across the Volga last year. *or* He **failed to swim** (= **didn't manage/wasn't able to swim**) across the Volga last year. Он **не смог** (ему не удалось) переплыть Волгу в прошлом году.
- We **were able to find** time to discuss it. (not: We ~~could find~~ time to discuss it.) Мы **смогли** найти время обсудить это.
- I **was able to go** to the country yesterday as I had a day off. (= I could and I went) Я **смог** съездить на природу вчера, так как у меня был выходной.
- I **couldn't finish** (**wasn't able / didn't manage / failed to finish**) my work in an hour. Я **не смог** закончить свою работу за час.
- He **managed to settle** the difficulty. Он **смог** уладить проблему.
- He **succeeded in attaining** the aim. Он **смог** достичь цели.
- After treatment he **was able to return** to work. (= **смог**)

Note 2:

- We also use '**be able to**' where **can/could** is grammatically impossible, for example:

A. We use '**used to be able**' to say that something was possible in the past but is not possible now.

- We **used to be able** to spend the whole summer in a village. Мы, бывало, могли проводить все лето в деревне.

- Everyone **used to be able** to have free eye tests.
- I **used to be able to work** all round the clock.

B. We use 'be able to' instead of 'can':

- after another modal verb (*will/would/must/might/shall/should*).
 - I **may/might be able to help** you later on.
 - You **should be able to buy** some cheese in that shop.
 - if you want to use an **-ing** form or a **to-Infinitive**.
 - I enjoy **being able to get** up late at the weekend.
 - We love **being able to talk** the local language.
 - You're foolish to expect **to be able to do** that.
 - It is nice **to be able to meet** regularly.
 - It is nice **to be able to get** some exercise.
 - He complained about not **being able to go** to London.
 - I'd like **to be able to speak** English fluently.
 - to talk about something somebody managed to do in *a particular situation in the past*.
 - They **were able to save** enough money to buy a car. Они смогли накопить достаточно денег, чтобы купить машину.
 - He **wasn't able to finish** his book. (= he **couldn't finish** it) Он не смог закончить свою книгу.
 - **Were you able to buy** everything on the list?
 - if you want to use Perfect Tenses.
 - I **haven't been able to work** hard *lately*. Я не могу много работать *последнее время*.
 - I **haven't been able to drive** since I dislocated (вывихнуть) my wrist.
 - I **have never been able to understand** you.
 - I don't think I **would have been able to get** an answer.
- We often use **can/could + verb** in place of the simple present with the verbs of perception (восприятие, ощущение), such as: '**see, hear, smell, feel, remember, recognize, imagine, understand**' to say that somebody is or was aware of something through one of his senses.
- I **can see** a bird in that tree. (= I see)
 - **Can you see** it? (= Do you see it?)
 - I **can smell** gas. Я чувствую запах газа.
 - I **can't see** him. Я не вижу его.
 - I **can't remember** the name of the book. Я не помню название книги.
 - There was such a noise we **couldn't hear**. ...что мы ничего не слышали.
 - I looked up but **couldn't see** anything. (= didn't see)
 - I **couldn't imagine** what it would be like to live in a hot climate.
 - I **couldn't understand** what he said.
 - We **could see** they weren't happy.
 - I **can't understand** why he decided to retire at 50.
 - I **can't understand** what he means.
 - I **can smell** something burning.

- Ты не можешь здесь оставаться, ты должен идти. – You **cannot** (= **can't**) stay here: you must go. (here **can** is negated)
- Ты можешь не оставаться здесь, ты можешь уйти, если хочешь. – You **can not** stay here: you may go if you want to. (here **the lexical verb** is negated)

Note: can not is not reduced to can't
cannot = can't

2b. Factual, specific(конкретная)possibility; supposition implying doubt, uncertainty (сомнение, неуверенность) (предположение, основанное на неуверенности)

- We use only '**could**' not '~~can~~' in *an affirmative sentence* with **all forms of the Infinitive**.
 - The meaning is similar to '**it is possible**', '**perhaps**', '**maybe**', '**it is likely**'. We use '**could**' to show that something is possible in a *specific* situation.
 - In Russian it corresponds to: **возможно, может быть**.
 - We use '**may**'/'**might**' in *affirmative and negative sentences* with all forms of the Infinitive in this meaning.
- We use '**could/may/might**' + **the Indefinite Infinitive**' to say that there is a chance that something might happen *in the future*:
 - It **could** snow tonight. **Возможно**, сегодня вечером пойдет снег.
 - We use '**could/may/might**' + **the Indefinite Infinitive or Continuous Infinitive**' to say that something is possibly true *at the moment of speaking*:
 - You **could be** wrong. Вы, **возможно/может быть**, не правы.
 - He always wears smart suits. He **could be** a businessman. Он всегда носит элегантные костюмы. Он **может быть** бизнесменом./ Он **мог бы быть** бизнесменом.
 - Where is Ken? – He **could be** outside. (*not: He ~~can be~~ outside.*)
 - He **could be working** now. **Возможно**, он сейчас работает./Он **может** сейчас работать.
 - We use '**could/may/might**' + **the Perfect Infinitive**'/'**could have/may have/might have**' + **participle II**' to say that it is possible that something has happened but I'm not sure now. (possibility in the past, **50 – 40 %** certainty)
 - 'I **can't** find my wallet (бумажник) anywhere.' 'You **could have left** it at home.' (= Perhaps you left/have left it at home.) **Возможно/может быть**, ты оставил его дома./ Ты **мог** оставить его дома.
 - 'Where was Sally last night?' 'I think she **may have been** at the cinema.' (= I think perhaps she was at the cinema.) **Возможно/может быть**, она была в кино./ Она **могла быть** в кино.
 - 'Peter is late.' 'He **might have missed** the train.' (= Perhaps he missed/has missed the train.) **Возможно/может быть**, он опоздал на поезд. / Он **мог** опоздать на поезд.
 - 'Why does Barbara look so upset?' 'She **may/might/could have failed** an exam.' (= Perhaps/ maybe, she failed/has failed an exam.)

Note:

Cf. It can be cold in England. (= It is <i>sometimes</i> cold in England.)	It may be cold tomorrow. (= <i>Perhaps</i> it will be cold tomorrow.)
---	--

2c. We use ‘**could + the Indefinite Infinitive**’/‘**might + the Indefinite Infinitive**’ to say that it is possible that something will happen, but we are not completely sure.

- Stay away from the dog. It **could/might bite** you. ...Она **может** укусить тебя.
- Keep all cleaning products in a safe place. Your children **could/might drink** them and poison themselves.
- Always put knives and other sharp objects away after use. Your children **could cut** themselves. ... Дети **могут** порезаться.
- There is a lot of traffic. That **could explain** why he is late.
- There **could be** a storm tonight: look at the clouds!

○ We use ‘**could have + participle II**’/‘**might have + participle II**’ to say that something was possible in the past but didn’t happen.

- You shouldn’t have swum to the other side of the lake. You **could/might have drowned**. Тебе не следовало плавать на другую сторону озера. Ты **мог** утонуть. (*luckily you didn’t drown*)
- You know, he shouted back at the boss. – Oh, he shouldn’t have. He **could have got fired**. Его **могли** уволить.
- You shouldn’t have run on the slippery road. You **could/might have broken** your leg.
- He shouldn’t have gone hiking by himself in the mountains. He **could/might have got lost**.
- You shouldn’t have played baseball in the rain. You **could/might have caught** a cold.

2d. We use ‘**could have + past participle**’ to say that someone had *the ability or opportunity* to do something in the past but did not do it. (*missed opportunities*) (this meaning is similar to ‘*would have been able to*’)

- She **could have paid** by credit card but she preferred to use cash. (= She had the ability to pay by credit card but she didn’t use it.)
- She **could have gone** to a much better school. (= She didn’t go to a good school though it was possible for her.) Она **могла** ходить в гораздо лучшую школу.
- I **could have gone** to China on holiday last year.
- He **could have started** his own business once but he didn’t try.
- I **could have gone** to university after leaving school but I chose to get a job instead. (= I had the opportunity to go, but I didn’t take it.)
- I **could have gone** to drama school, but my parents wouldn’t let me. (= I had the opportunity, but I didn’t go.)
- You know, you **could have done** French.
- We didn’t go out last night. We **could have gone** to the cinema but we decided to stay at home. ... **могли бы** пойти в кино, но решили остаться дома.

2e. We use ‘**couldn’t have + past participle**’ to say that it is not possible that someone had *the ability or opportunity* to do something or *it is not possible that something happened*.

- Mary **couldn’t have taken** the car because Jim was using it. (= It is not possible that she took the car.) Мэри не могла взять машину, т. к. она была у Джима./Не может быть, чтобы Мэри взяла машину,...
- He **couldn’t have drawn** this map! He didn’t have enough knowledge. (= It is not possible that he drew the map.) Не мог он нарисовать эту карту!

3. **Permission** (*asking for permission, giving or refusing it*), permission depends on circumstances. (*the Indefinite Infinitive is used*)

- **Can I have** some sweets? – *No, you can’t.*
- **Could I be excused?** – *No, I’m afraid you can’t.* (**could** is more polite than **can**)
- Both students and staff **were allowed to use** the swimming pool.
- We **couldn’t go** into the library after 5 p.m. = We **were not allowed to go** into the library after 5 p.m.
- The teacher said we **could go** home. Учитель разрешил нам идти домой.

○ **Asking for permission**

- **Can/Could I ...?** = **Do you mind if .../Would you mind if...?** (**could** is more polite than **can**; we often use **could** when we are not sure permission will be given.)
- We normally reply with: ‘*Certainly.*’/‘*Of course*’/‘*Why not?*’/‘*No, I’m afraid you can’t.*’/‘*I’m afraid not*’/‘*I’d rather you didn’t*’/‘*Certainly not.*’
- A polite refusal is usually accompanied by some kind of explanation: *I’m afraid you can’t because ...*

- **Can I borrow** your pencil? – *Of course.*
- **Could I borrow** your book please? – *No, you can’t./No, I’m afraid you can’t.*
- **Can I ask** a question, please? – *Yes, you can.*
- **Could I possibly use** your telephone, please? (*possibly* is commonly added to make requests more polite.)

○ **Giving permission**

- **can** = you are allowed to do something (**can** is *informal*.) (We do not use ~~could~~ or ~~might~~ to give permission)
- **Could I speak** to the manager? – Yes, you **can**. /Yes, you **may**. (*not*: Yes, you ~~could~~. Yes, you ~~might~~.)
- I’m not quite ready to go, but you **can leave** if you’re in a hurry. I’ll meet you later. (*informal*)
- You **can borrow** that pen if you want to.

○ **Refusing permission**

- **can't** = you are not allowed to do something (We do not use ~~could not~~ or ~~might not~~ to refuse permission.)

- I'm sorry but you **can't park** your car here.
- **Could I go** through these files? – I'm sorry, but you **can't**. (*not*: 'I'm sorry, but you ~~couldn't~~.')
- Children **cannot bathe** except in the presence of two lifesavers.
- You **can't smoke** on the underground. (The law doesn't allow you to do this.)
- You **can't come** in here with these muddy shoes!

○ Talking about permission

- We use 'can' and 'be allowed to' to refer to **laws or regulations** (правила; нормы; инструкция).
 - Passengers **can smoke /are allowed to smoke** in the lounge (гостиная).
 - Students **can take** a year away from university.
 - In Britain you **are not allowed to drive** a car until you are seventeen, but in some countries you **are allowed to drive** when you are only sixteen.
 - In the 1950s British children **could leave** school at the age of fourteen.
- We use 'could' or 'was/were allowed to' to say that we had **general permission to do something in the past**.
 - I **could/was allowed to return** home after 11 o'clock at night when I was young. (I was allowed to return home late **in general**.)
 - We **could go** to any part of the island we wanted.
- We use **was/were allowed to** and not ~~could~~ to say that we had permission to do something **in a particular/specific situation in the past**.
 - I **was allowed to** watch TV until very late last night. (*not*: I ~~could~~ watch... as this is **a particular** situation.)
 - I **was allowed to leave** early yesterday. (*not*: I ~~could leave~~ early yesterday.)

Note 1: When we **give and refuse permission**, we use 'can'/'can't' (*not* 'could'/'couldn't').

- You **can take** my umbrella. (*informal; giving permission*)
- **Could I have** some sweets? (*asking for permission*) – No, you **can't**. (*refusing permission*)

Note 2: You also use 'be allowed to' when you **are talking about permission**, but **not** when you **are asking for it or giving it**.

- We **are not allowed to** use calculators in exams. (= **can't**)
- It was only after several months that I **was allowed to visit** her. (*not*: ~~could visit~~)
- When Mr. Wilt asks for a solicitor (адвокат), he **will be allowed to see** one.

Note 3: When the action **was permitted and performed**, the expression 'was allowed to' is preferable.

- When translating the story we **were allowed to use** a dictionary. Когда мы переводили рассказ, нам **разрешили** / **можно было** пользоваться словарем.
- **Was he allowed to see** the patient?

- He **wasn't allowed to board** the plane. = He **couldn't board** the plane.

4. Request

- We use '**can/could + the Indefinite Infinitive**'
- *Request* is found in *interrogative* sentences. When you want to tell somebody to do something or to ask somebody to help you, you can use:
 - **can you ... , can I ...** (in *informal* situations);
 - **could you ... , could I ...** (is *polite*).

Very polite requests:

- **Can I (possibly) use your phone?**
 - **Could I (possibly) use your phone?**
 - **Do you think I could/might use your phone?**
 - **I wonder if I could/might use your phone?** ('*possibly*' is commonly added to make requests *more polite*.)
-
- **Can you tell** me the time? - *Certainly.*
 - **Could you show** me how to do it? – *Of course I can.* (not: - Of course I ~~could~~.)
 - **Can I possibly make** a copy of this story? – *No, you can't, I'm afraid.*
 - **Can/Could I borrow your pen?** – *Of course you can./No, you can't.* (not: – No, you ~~couldn't~~.)
 - **Could you possibly give** me a lift? – *I'm afraid I can't at the moment.*
 - **Could you possibly switch** on the light?
 - Excuse me! **Could you help** me? – *Sure./Of course./Well, I'm a bit busy at the moment.*
 - **Do you think you could help** me? (Requests may be *hesitant* – колеблющийся; нерешительный, сомневающийся)
 - **I wonder if you could look** after my dog while I'm away.

5. Prohibition (it is found in negative sentences as *prohibition* may be understood as the *negation of permission* – **not to be allowed to...**) It corresponds to the Russian **нельзя, не надо**.

- We use '**can/could + the Indefinite Infinitive**'
 - You **can't** cross the street here. (= you are not allowed to cross...) Здесь **нельзя** переходить улицу.
 - **Can we stay** here? – *No, I'm afraid you can't.* (= you are not allowed to stay...)
 - You **can't wear** jeans at work. (= you aren't allowed to wear ...)
 - They **couldn't wear** jeans at work. (= they weren't allowed to...)
 - You **cannot play** football in the street. (i.e. you have no right)
 - You **can't cross** the street here.
 - Women **can't drive** in some Arab countries. (= they aren't allowed to drive...)
- *Cf.:*
 - **Request: Can/Could** you discuss the subject with your friends? Вы не могли бы обсудить этот вопрос со своими друзьями?
 - **Asking for permission: Can/Could** I discuss the subject with my friends? Можно мне обсудить вопрос с моими друзьями?

- **Permission:** You **can** discuss the subject with your friends. Можете обсудить вопрос со своими друзьями.
- **Prohibition:** You **can't** discuss the subject with your friends. Нельзя обсуждать (не обсуждайте) этот вопрос с вашими друзьями.
- Cf.:
- **Ability:** Can he spell? Умеет ли он грамотно писать?
- **Request:** Can/Could you spell your name for me? Продиктуйте вашу фамилию по буквам.
- **Asking for permission:** Can/Could I spell this word for you? Можно я вам это слово по буквам продиктую?

6. Offer

- We use 'Can I ... or 'Could I ... + the Indefinite Infinitive' when we **offer** to do things for somebody (*present or future reference*)
- 'Can I ...' (*informal*)
- 'Could I ...' (*more polite*)
- Can I help you with the dishes? – *Yes, please. / No, thank you.*
- Can we do anything for you?
- Can/Could I offer you some coffee? – *Yes, I'd like some please.*
- Can/Could I offer you a sandwich? – *Yes, I'd like one please. Yes, I'd love one please.*
- What can I do for you?
- Is there anything I can do to help?
- Can I be of any service to you? (это предложение звучит подчеркнуто вежливо)

7. Suggestion

- We use 'can/could + the Indefinite Infinitive' to suggest doing something. (*present or future reference*)
 - I/we **can always leave** early. (*informal*)
 - We **can go** to the cinema.
 - You **could phone** her. Ты мог бы позвонить ей.
 - We **could go** into research.
 - What **shall we do** this evening. We **could go** to the cinema. Мы могли бы пойти в кино.
 - When you go to New York, you **could stay** with Linda. ... ты могла бы остановиться у Линды.
- We use 'could + the Perfect Infinitive' to suggest doing something. (*past reference*)
 - He **could have asked** for advice.
- You also use 'couldn't' in a question to suggest doing something.
 - **Couldn't we do** it at the weekend? Не могли бы мы сделать это в конце недели?

Typical responses: (Yes,) I'd like to. / I'd love to.

(No,) I'd prefer not to, thank you.

8. Reproach. It is used in affirmative sentences.

- We use only **could** + **the Perfect Infinitive** /(*could have* + *Participle II*) (*past reference*)
- **Could** is rendered in Russian by: мог бы
 - You **could have met** me at the station. Ты мог бы встретить меня на вокзале.
 - You **could have phoned** me. Ты мог бы мне позвонить.

9. Criticism, disapproval (неодобрение). It is used in affirmative sentences.

- **could** + **the Indefinite Infinitive** (*present or future reference*)
- **could** + **the Perfect Infinitive**/(*could have* + *Participle II*) (*past reference*)
 - She **could** at least **wait** until 5 o'clock. (*present or future reference*)
 - She **could** at least **have waited** until 5 o'clock. (*past reference*)
 - You **could have told** me about the party. (=You had the chance to tell me but you didn't.)

10. Surprise, disbelief (неверие; недоверие)

- We use '**can/could** + **all forms of the Infinitive**' *in interrogative sentences*.
- It corresponds to the Russian: **неужели ...?; может ли быть ... ?; разве ...?**
- **can/could** = Is it possible that ... ?
 - **Can it be** so late? Неужели уже так поздно? (Is it possible that it is so late?)
 - **Can he know** it? Неужели он знает это?
 - **Can/could they be waiting** for us? Неужели они ждут нас?
 - **Can he still be working**? Неужели он все еще работает?
 - **Can he have thought** we had left already? Неужели он думал, что мы уже уехали?
 - **Could he have known** her before? Неужели он знал ее прежде. (= Is it possible that he should have known her before? /Is it possible that he has known her before?)
 - **Can/could the children have been playing** since morning? Неужели дети с утра играют?
 - **Can he have been waiting** for us all this time? Неужели он ждал нас все это время?

11. Incredulity (недоверчивость), **doubt, improbability** (невероятность, неправдоподобие)

- We use '**can't/couldn't** + **all forms of the Infinitive**' *in negative sentences*
- It corresponds to the Russian: **не может быть, чтобы ...; вряд ли (это так)..; невероятно...**
- '**can't/couldn't** = It is impossible that ...
- The time reference is indicated **not** by the **form of the verb**, i.e. **can** or **could** but by that of the infinitive. However, **could** is used instead of **can** to express greater doubt; **could** makes the sentences a little more emphatic; the negation with **could** is not so categorical as with **can**
- Such sentences are emotionally coloured and so their application is rather restricted

- He **can't be** so old. (= It is impossible that he is old.) Не может быть, что он так стар.
- He **can't be telling** the truth. Не может быть, что он говорит правду.
- She **can't be still waiting**. Не может быть, чтобы она все еще ждала вас.
- He **can't be working** all the time. . (= It is impossible that he is working all the time.)
- He **can't have seen** it. Не может быть, чтобы он видел это./Не мог он это видеть./Вряд ли он это видел. (= It's impossible that he saw it.)
- She **can't have understood** what you meant. Вряд ли она поняла, что ты имел в виду.
- 'Oh!' cried Fleur: 'You **can't have done it!**' Не может быть, чтобы вы это сделали!
- She **couldn't have done** it; she is such a nice woman. Не может быть, чтобы она сделала это; она такая славная женщина. (= It is impossible that she should have done it/ It is impossible that she has done it.)
- He **can't have been translating** the article for two hours. Не может быть, чтобы он переводил эту статью два часа.

Note 1: The Russian sentences of the type: «*Неужели он не...? Не может быть, чтобы он не...*» can be translated into English in different ways:

- **by complex sentences:**
 - **Can it be that** you haven't seen him? Неужели вы не видели его?
 - **It can't be that** you don't know him. Не может быть, что вы его не знаете.
- **by different lexical means:**
 - **Can/could you have failed** to see him? Неужели вы его не видели?
 - He **can't have failed** to notice you. Он не мог не заметить вас. /Не может быть, чтобы он не заметил вас.
 - **Can she dislike** me? Неужели я ей не нравлюсь?
 - He **can't dislike** it here. Не может быть, чтобы ему здесь не нравилось.
 - **Can nobody have seen** him? Неужели никто не видел его?
 - Nobody **can** have seen him do it. Не может быть, чтобы никто не заметил
 - **Can he have never written** that letter? Неужели он **так и не** написал письмо?
 - She **can't have failed to see** him. Не может быть, чтобы она его не увидела/ не могла она его не увидеть.
 - She **can't dislike** music. Не может быть, чтобы она не любила музыку.

12. Logical assumption (предположение)/deduction (логический вывод), (based on evidence-очевидность)

- 'can't'/'couldn't' is the negative of 'must' in this meaning
- We use 'can't'/'couldn't' in negative sentences to say that *we are not sure* about something in the present or past. (= *I'm sure ..., I'm certain ..., I don't think ..., it is impossible...*)
 - That **can't be** Jack. He drives a Fiat. (= I'm sure that isn't Jack/It is impossible that it is Jack.) Это не может быть Джек. / Не может быть, что это Джек. /Я уверена, что это не Джек.
 - They **couldn't be** on holiday. (= I don't think they are on holiday.)
 - He **couldn't be** a doctor, he isn't wearing a white coat. (= I'm certain he isn't a doctor.)
 - She **can't have gone** to a party. (= I'm sure she hasn't gone to a party.) Не могла она уйти на вечеринку. /Не может быть, что она ушла на вечеринку. /Я уверена, что она не ушла на вечеринку.

- He **can't have received** the message. (= I'm sure he didn't receive the message.) Не мог он получить сообщение. / Не может быть, что он получил сообщение. /Я уверена, что он не получил сообщение.
 - You **can't have forgotten** me. (= I'm sure you haven't forgotten me.)
 - He **can't have said** that. (= I'm sure he didn't say it.)
 - She **can't have fixed** the computer, it's still not working properly. (= I'm sure she didn't fix it.)
- We use '**must**' in affirmative sentences to say that *we are sure* about something in the present or past. (= *I'm sure ..., I'm certain ..., I have no doubt ...*.)
- That **must be** Helen when she was a baby. (= I'm sure that is Helen when she was a baby.) Это **должна быть** Хелен в детстве. /Это, **должно быть**, Хелен в детстве. /Я уверен, что это Хелен в детстве.
 - You **must have enjoyed** your trip to Mexico. (= I'm sure you enjoyed your trip to Mexico.)
 - This article **must have been written** by a woman. (= I'm sure this article was written by a woman.) Эта статья, **должно быть**, была написана женщиной. /Я уверена, что эта статья была написана женщиной.
 - She **must have been studying**. (= I'm certain she was studying.)

can't/couldn't are used in negations and express *negative logical assumptions*

must is used in affirmative sentences and express *positive logical assumptions*

- You **can't/couldn't have been** at the swimming pool yesterday. It was closed all day. (= I'm sure you weren't at the swimming pool yesterday)
- The shoes you bought are very nice. They **must have been expensive**. (= I'm sure they were expensive.)

13. In questions we can use **can, could, might** (but not ~~may~~) to express **supposition /possibility**

- I can't find him anywhere. Where **can/could/might he have gone**? Куда же он мог уйти?
- Where **can I have left** my spectacles? Где я мог забыть свои очки!
- How **could they have missed** the train? They left the house early. Как они могли опоздать на поезд! Они рано вышли из дома.
- What **can it mean**? Что это может означать!
- Who **can that be** at this time of night? Кто это может быть в такое время ночью!
- Why **could he have left** that note? Почему он оставил эту записку!
- Where **can/could these noises be coming** from?
- The telephone is ringing. Who **can that be**?
- Sally is very late. What **could have happened** to her?

14. When **could** denotes an **unreal action**, it has *no temporal meaning* at all.

- We use '**could + Indefinite Infinitive**' when we speak of the *present or future* (present or future reference.)
- We use '**could + Perfect Infinitive**' when we speak of the *past* (past reference).
- **could do** – a possible action **now or in the future** (*present or future reference*)

- **could have done** – the action **was possible in the past but didn't happen** (past reference)
 - She **could paint** landscapes. Она могла бы писать пейзажи. (*present or future reference*)
 - She **could learn** much more quickly if she paid attention. (= She would be able to learn much more quickly if she paid attention.)
 - She **could have explained** the mystery (*but she didn't*). Она могла бы объяснить эту тайну. - (the action refers to the past, but it was not carried out; past reference)
- **Set phrases:**
 - **can't help doing (cannot help doing)** не могу не делать ч-л, не могу не удержаться от ч-л
 - **can't but do smth (cannot but do)** не могу не делать ч-л; мне ничего другого не остаётся, как
 - I **can't but suggest** you do it. Я **не могу не** предложить вам сделать это.
 - We **cannot but hope** he is right. Нам остаётся только надеяться, что ...
 - **One cannot but wonder** ... нельзя не задуматься...
 - **as can be** – an intensifying expression
 - They are as pleased **as can be**. Они очень (страшно) довольны.

Exercises

Exercise 1. *Comment on the meaning of the verb can/could/to be able to/to be allowed to. Translate the sentences into Russian.*

1. He is much better and can walk without my help now. 2. Oh! It can't be true! 3. He can't have taken it (the box) upstairs this morning. 4. Anne can't mean that, it's not like her. 5. He couldn't have done it all by himself. Somebody helped him, I'm sure. 6. Can you believe the girl? Can it be true? 7. Could she have done it without consulting me? 8. Can it really be as bad as that? 9. You can wait in the kitchen. 10. You can take another umbrella. 11. I don't believe a single word; he can't have failed to learn the news before us. 12. Could I help you to carry those bags? 13. No, children, you can't take the dog indoors. 14. Could you come again tomorrow? 15. Why didn't Sally come to work in her car? – She didn't say. She could have lent it to her sister, I suppose. 16. I'd like to be able to play the piano well. 17. She enjoys being able to speak foreign languages. 18. Even though I had hurt my leg, I managed to swim back to the boat. 19. You could have helped me. Why didn't you? 20. I could have gone to China on holiday last year, but I decided not to. 21. How long have you been able to play the guitar? 22. Look! I can lift this chair with one hand. 23. Andrew was allowed to leave school early yesterday because he wasn't feeling well. (Permission; a particular situation) 24. Until the 19th century people could/were allowed to travel freely between most countries without a passport. (Permission) 25. The children were allowed to watch the film on TV last night. 26. Her son has to wear a uniform in his new school, but in his old school he could/was allowed to wear whatever he liked. 27. Where is Simon? – He could be in living room. (= Perhaps he is in the living room.) 28. I forgot to lock my car yesterday. – You were very lucky. Someone could have stolen

it. 29. He can't leave yet. (= It is not possible for him to leave yet.) 30. He can't be leaving yet. (= I'm not sure he is leaving.)

Exercise 2. *Comment on the meaning of the verb **can/could/to be able to**. Translate the sentences into Russian.*

1. He said he could see me the next Sunday/ He said he would be able to see me the next Sunday. 2. He said you could/would/might leave early. 3. He could (*or*: was able to) swim five miles when he was a child. 4. I managed to (*or*: was able to; *not*: ~~could~~) finish the job yesterday. 5. Can you run 1500 meters in 5 minutes?/Are you able to run 1500 meters in 5 minutes? 6. Billy is only 9 months old and he can already stand up. (*or*: he is already able to stand up.) 7. Look! I can stand on my hands! (~~'am able to stand'~~ would be unnatural: when we are commenting on something that is happening at the time of speaking, we use 'can'.) 8. I used to be able to hold my breath for one minute under water. 9. I tried again and found I could swim/was able to swim. (interchangeable, when we refer to the acquisition of a skill after effort) 10. I can smell something burning. 11. I can/can't understand why he retired at 50. 12. I could/couldn't understand why he had decided to retire at 50. 13. I can't/couldn't imagine what it would be like to live in a hot climate. 14. I'm sure you could get into university if you applied. 15. He can't/couldn't have told you anything I don't already know. 16. I'll be able to pass my driving test after I've had a few lessons. 17. I've been trying to contact him, but I haven't managed to. 18. If you can pass/are able to pass your driving test at the first attempt, I'll be very surprised. 19. This car can only be driven by a midget (карлик, лилипут). 20. It can be quite cold in Cairo in January. (= It is sometimes cold.) 21. It could be quite cold in Cairo. (= It was sometimes cold.) 22. I wish I could swim. 23. I wish Peter could have come to my party. 24. If only we could be together.

Exercise 3. *Which of these things can you do? Which can't you do? Write sentences like this:*

- **a) I can play chess, but my sister can't. / I can't play chess, but my sister can.**
(ability)

1. count to twenty in Spanish
2. ride a bike
3. drive a car
4. understand sign language
5. swim like a fish
6. ride a horse
7. sail a boat
8. use a word processor
9. play chess
10. run a marathon

- **b) Now write down five questions like this about the things above to ask someone else.**

1. **Can** you **play** chess really well?

- *c) How many of the things above could you do when you were ten years old?*

Write sentences like this:

1. When I was ten years old, I **could ride** a bike, but I **couldn't drive** a car.

Exercise 4. Complete these sentences using **can, can't, could, or couldn't**.

1. There was a woman with a big hat right in front of me. I ...**couldn't**... see a thing.
2. I'm sorry, you're in my light. I see what I'm doing.
3. It was a huge hall and we were at the back, so we hear very well.
4. When she screams, you hear her all over the house.
5. She was phoning all the way from Singapore, but I hear her very clearly.
6. you hear me at the back?
7. Put your hands up if you hear me.

Exercise 5. Complete the sentences using **could, couldn't or was/were able to**.

1. My grandfather was a very clever man. He ... **could** ... speak five languages.
2. I looked everywhere for the book but I ... **couldn't** ... find it.
3. They didn't want to come with us at first but we ... **were able to** ... persuade them.
4. Laura had hurt her leg and walk very well.
5. Sue wasn't at home when I phoned but I contact her at her office.
6. I looked very carefully and I see a figure in the distance.
7. I wanted to buy some tomatoes. The first shop I went to didn't have any but I get some in the next shop.
8. My grandmother loved music. She play the piano very well.
9. A girl fell into the river but fortunately we rescue her.
10. I had forgotten to bring my camera so I take any photographs.

Exercise 6. Complete the sentences using: (*ability; possibility*)

can could can't couldn't were able to will be able to won't be able to

1. I don't think we travel to Mars before 2010.
2. Luckily the weather was great, so we..... have a picnic.
3. My cousin swim when he was three, but I still
4. The music was so loud that I hear what you were saying.
5. If we don't finish early, we see the programme on TV.
6. Anyone do that!

Exercise 7. Rewrite these sentences using **be able to**, like this: (*possibility*)

Example: I **can** get up late. → I **enjoy being able to** get up late.

The reasons I enjoy holidays ...

1. I can wear casual clothes. →

2. I can watch TV when I want. →
3. I can see my friends. →
4. I can travel abroad. →
5. I can stay up late. →

Exercise 8. Translate the following sentences into English.

1. Я умею переводить такие тексты. 2. Как вы думаете, когда вы сможете опубликовать эту книгу? 3. Я никогда не умел переводить такие статьи. 4. После лечения он смог вернуться на работу. 5. Я не могу много работать последнее время. 6. Это платье было слишком дорогое. Я не могла его купить. 7. Я вчера плохо себя чувствовал. Я не мог ничего есть. 8. Никто меня не беспокоил, поэтому я смог быстро написать письмо. 9. Почему ты вчера остался дома? Ты мог бы пойти в кино. 10. Кажется, я не смогу сдать экзамен. 11. Я мог поехать в Китай отдыхать в прошлом году. (missed opportunity) 12. Я бы хотел уметь говорить по-английски бегло. 13. Мы, бывало, могли проводить все лето в деревне.

Exercise 9. All of these sentences can be used to ask for permission. Rewrite each one using 'can'.

1. Do you mind if I open this window a little? ... **Can I open this window just a little?**
 - ..
 2. I'd like to ask you just one more question.
 3. Is it all right if I give you a ring some time later?
 4. Is it okay if we go swimming?
 5. Do you mind if I sit down?
 6. I'd like an ice-cream please.
 7. Do you think I could go home now?
 8. I wonder if I could come back later.
- Make the requests more polite by changing **can** to **could**.

Exercise 10. Change these statements into polite questions, using **could**. (Request)

1. I want to have another cup of coffee. → **Could I have another cup of coffee, please?**
2. Give me a cigarette.
3. Tell me when the train leaves.
4. We want to have a table near the window.
5. I want to have a ticket to London.
6. I want to go home early today.

Exercise 11. Rewrite these sentences **asking for permission**, starting with the phrases given.

1. I'd like to have a little more time./ *I wonder if..* ***I could have a little more time.***
2. Can I start now?/ *Do you think*
3. Can I listen to the radio while you're working?/ *Do you mind if*
4. May I come in now?/ *Is it all right if*
5. I'd like to speak next./ *Do you think*

Exercise 12. Rewrite these sentences **giving permission**, starting with the words given.

1. You're allowed to do whatever you want./ You can ... ***do whatever you want*** ...
2. It's all right to have visitors after three o'clock. / You're allowed to
3. You may all go home as soon as you've finished work. /You can all
4. I don't mind you coming back late as long as you don't make too much noise./You can
5. With this banker's card you can cash a cheque for up to £250. / With this card you are allowed to
6. I'll let you use my pen until I need it myself. /You can

Exercise 13. In which of these sentences is it possible to use **can**? Write **Yes** or **No**.

1. The butterfly be recognised by the orange streaks on its wings.
2. 'She's probably on holiday.' 'Yes, you be right.'
3. Peter have a big screwdriver. I'll go and ask him.
4. Infections sometimes actually be made worse by taking antibiotics.
5. Moving to a new job be a very stressful experience.
6. I think Michael enjoy himself if he joins the football club.
7. This 17th century chairbe of interest to you.
8. The seeds from this plant be up to 20 centimetres long.
9. With the factory closing next week, he lose his job.
10. Around this time of year, eagles sometimes be seen in the mountains.

Exercise 14. Fill in the gaps with **could (not)** or **was/were (not) allowed to**, as in the example.

1. The children***weren't allowed to***...watch the late film last night. They had to go to bed at half past eight.
2. I use your pen for a minute, please?
3. When I was fourteen, I stay out until ten o'clock. I had to be home by 9:30.
4. The policeman informed us that wepark the car outside the French Embassy.
5. The head teacher told the students that they bring their skateboards to school any more.
6. When Derek lived in his own flat, he come and go whenever he wanted.
7. I stay at my friend's house at the weekend and we had a great time.

8. When we were young, we play outside until ten o'clock during the school holidays.

Exercise 15. *Translate the following sentences into English. (can, could, to be able to)*

1. Они не хотели продавать дом, но мы сумели убедить их сделать это. 2. Она умела довольно хорошо играть на пианино. 3. Я видел горы через окно (Через окно мне были видны горы). 4. Я живо помню, как мама рассказывала мне страшные истории о ее школьных годах. 5. Это химическое вещество может быть использовано как невидимые чернила. 6. В любом случае конкуренты фирмы имели бы возможность продавать более дешевую мебель. 7. Настоящий успех заключается только в том, чтобы иметь возможность жить так, как ты хочешь. 8. Нужно уметь отличать ценности от всякой ерунды. 9. Нужно уметь оценить продавца. 10. Имея возможность выбора, мы чувствуем на себе меньше давления. 11. Утром он, без сомнения, все сможет объяснить. 12. Мы можем завтра пойти в кино.

Exercise 16. *Read this passage and complete the sentences below.*

In Britain you are not allowed to leave school or to get married until you are at least sixteen years old. You cannot drive a car until you are seventeen, and you cannot drive a taxi until you are twenty-one. You are allowed to vote at the age of eighteen.

1. When you are sixteen you can ...**leave school**...and you can also but you are not allowed to until you are eighteen.
2. You are allowed towhen you are seventeen, but you can'tuntil you are twenty-one.
3. You canat the age of seventeen and you canat the age of eighteen.
4. It seems silly that you are allowed towhen you are only sixteen, but you're not allowed to until you are seventeen.
5. I think you should be allowed toa year earlier, when you are seventeen.
6. If you canat the age of seventeen, I don't see why you shouldn't be allowed to

Exercise 17. *Complete the sentences. Use **could** or **could have** + a suitable verb.*

1. – What shall we do this evening? – I don't mind. We ...**could go**...to the cinema.
2. – I had a very boring evening at home yesterday.
– Why did you stay at home? You to the cinema.
3. – There's an interesting job advertised in the paper. You for it.
– What sort of job is it? Show me the advertisement.
4. – Did you go to the concert last night?
– No. We but we decided not to.
5. – Where shall we meet tomorrow?

Well, I to your house if you like.

Exercise 18. Express surprise and doubt about the statements. Translate the sentences.

Model 1:

- **He knows English well.** → *Can (could) he know English well? He can't know English well.*
 - **He is waiting for somebody.** → *Can he be waiting for somebody? He can't be waiting for somebody.*
1. He understands every word you say.
 2. She is really fond of the child.
 3. They know how to get there.
 4. She is crying.
 5. She is looking for somebody.
 6. They are always fighting.
 7. But they are very fond of each other.
 8. Children like to play here.
 9. He is telling the truth.

Model 2:

- **She knew about it.** → *Can she have known about it? She can't have known about it.*
1. He saw the lion move.
 2. There was a public meeting in the town.
 3. On Friday morning Bill came to my office.
 4. He was dismissed.
 5. He has greatly changed.
 6. I don't believe it. Phil would have never done such a thing.

Exercise 19. Michael Hard is 60 years old. Sometimes feels that he has wasted his life. Here is the story about *Michael Hard*, read and replace the words in italics with 'could have' as in the examples. (*missed opportunities*)

Example: Michael Hard *had an ability to go* to University, but he didn't want to.
→ Michael Hard *could have gone* to University and he didn't want to go.

1. Michael *had the intelligence to pass* his final exams at school but he didn't take them.
2. Many people thought he *had the ability to be* a professional boxer when he was younger but he didn't try.
3. When he was 25, he *had the chance to get* married but he decided not to.
4. He *had the opportunity to start* his own business once, but he didn't want to.
5. Being left some money he *had the chance to travel* but he didn't like to.
6. He *had the chance to emigrate* to Australia a few years ago but he decided not to.
7. He *had the chance to buy* a house, but he preferred to have a flat.

8. Being a sociable man *it was easy for him to make* friends but he didn't want to get involved.

Exercise 20. *Translate into English. We use **could have + Participle II** to say that someone had the ability or the opportunity to do something in the past but didn't do it. (missed opportunities)*

1. Я не понимаю этого. Мой сын мог стать кем угодно. Почему он решил стать фокусником? 2. Я не понимаю этого. Джордж мог жениться на ком угодно. Почему он женился на Мэйбл? 3. Эти туристы могли питаться в любом ресторане города, Почему они ели в Joe's кафетерии? 4. Грегори мог поступить на любой курс, который захотел бы. Интересно, почему он посещает 1-й курс по французскому языку четвертый раз. 5. Майкл мог посмотреть по телевизору что угодно вчера. Почему он смотрел старый ковбойский фильм, который он уже видел несколько раз прежде? 6. Миссис Ватсон могла поехать куда угодно в отпуск. Никто не может понять, почему она осталась в Лондоне. 7. Мелисса Грант могла выбрать любую роль в любой пьесе. Почему она выбрала эту ужасную пьесу? 8. Я не могу поверить .в это! Мой друг Джон мог отправить мне открытку из любой страны, которую он посетил во время своего путешествия вокруг света. Но я так и не получил от него известий ни разу. 9. Сэм мог написать любую журнальную статью, какую захотел бы. Почему же его последняя статья о пылесосах? 10. Профессор Джоунз – гений. Он мог изобрести какую угодно машину. Интересно, почему он изобрел поющую печатную машинку. 11. У Тома вчера было важное интервью по поводу работы. Он мог надеть какой угодно галстук. Интересно, почему он выбрал полосатый зеленый с оранжевым горошком.

Exercise 21. *Translate into English, using the verb **can, could, to be able to**.*

1. Ты мог бы перевести этот текст? 2. Эту книгу можно купить в любом магазине. 3. Он мог бы сделать это на прошлой неделе. Он не был особенно занят. 4. Он не мог показать нам расчеты, так как они не были готовы. 5. В комнате темно, я не могу найти свои вещи. 6. Не может быть, чтобы она ошиблась. 7. Неужели они ждали нас все это время? 8. Не может быть, чтобы вас отправили ко мне. Я не имею к этому никакого отношения. 9. Можно мне чаю? 10. Он сказал, что мы можем идти. 11. Я могу вернуться на автобусе. 12. Я мог бы вернуться на автобусе. 13. Морис уставился на письмо. «И откуда оно могло прийти?» 14. Эванс был настолько неграмотным, что он просто не мог написать ни одного слова этого доклада. 15. Он взял меню и сказал: «Ну, я полагаю, что ты хочешь есть. Давай посмотрим, что мы можем поесть». 16. Дорога пешком назад в гостиницу оказалась очень длинной, и он никогда не проделал бы ее без карты. 17. У нее было квадратное лицо, которое, вероятно, никогда не выглядело молодым. 18. На что ты смотришь, Вилли? – Ни на что. – Нельзя смотреть ни на что. 19. Она сказала более громким голосом: «Ты слышишь меня?» 20. Сейчас она уже могла бы вернуться из отпуска. 21. Никто

не смог бы произвести на меня большее впечатление, чем это сделал ты. 22. В тот момент я мог бы убить его. 23. Ему не могло быть больше тридцати лет, когда мы с ним встретились впервые. 24. Я умел плавать, когда мне было пять лет. Папа научил меня. 25. Они очень милы со мной. Просто невозможно было быть более вежливыми и услужливыми. 26. Уже темнеет. Сколько же сейчас может быть времени? 27. Я умею плавать с пяти лет. 28. Нам удалось убедить студентов в необходимости привлекать больше литературы.

Exercise 22. *Translate into English, using the verb can, could.*

1. Не может быть, чтобы он солгал. Это на него не похоже. 2. Не может быть, чтобы они были брат и сестра. Они совсем не похожи друг на друга. 3. Вряд ли это так. Во всяком случае мы не можем это доказать. 4. Интересно, что вы могли бы предложить при подобных обстоятельствах? 5. Вряд ли он мог допустить такую ошибку. Он опытный инженер. 6. Если бы не он, мы могли бы заблудиться. Уже темнело. 7. Не может быть, чтобы они нас заметили. Мы были довольно далеко от них. 8. Не может быть, чтобы они нас не заметили. Мы были совсем близко. 9. Нельзя судить о человеке по внешности. Наружность обманчива. 10. Могу я видеть управляющего? – К сожалению, нет. Он будет сегодня в 12. 11. Можно тебя на несколько слов? – Ну, в чем дело? 12. Это нельзя сделать так быстро. Вам придется подождать. 13. Не мог он этого сказать. Он не так глуп, как ты думаешь. 14. Я бы давно мог это сделать, если бы знал, что это так срочно. 15. Я не верю, что есть болезни, которые нельзя излечить. Мы просто не знаем, как их лечить. 16. Не может быть, чтобы это была правда.

Exercise 23. *Choose can, could or be able to (or negative forms) to complete these sentences. If two answers are possible, write them both and underline the more likely one.*

1. Peter has a computer that fit into his jacket pocket.
2. I had some free time yesterday, so I write a few letters.
3. From where we're standing, this land belongs to me for as far as you see.
4. My teacher's given me a translation to do for homework, but I understand it.
5. Watch this, Mum; I stand on one leg.
6. 'When's Megan's birthday?' 'As far as I remember, it's in June.'
7. The plans were destroyed before they be read by the invading army.
8. Until you repay some of your present debt, we cannot lend you any more money.
9. 'The game be played by up to six people.' (*from the instructions for a board game*)
10. When I was younger, I was hopeless at sports. I throw or kick a ball properly.

Exercise 24. Complete these sentences with **could** or **was/were able to**. In one of each pair you can use either, so write them both. In the other it is more appropriate only to use **was/were able to**.

1. a. Despite yesterday's snowfalls, we drive home in less than an hour.
b. I only lived a mile from the office and drive to work in less than an hour.
2. a. When she was the manager of the company, she take holidays when she wanted to.
b. I was very busy at work, but I take a short holiday over Christmas.
3. a. In the 16th century, fishermen smuggle wine into the country without fear of being caught by the authorities.
b. Bennett smuggle the knife on board the plane without being detected by the security system.

Exercise 25. Exercise 18 Complete these sentences with **can** followed by one of the verbs below. If it is inappropriate to use **can**, use a form of **to be able to** instead.

count find give investigate meet put forward start work

1. We don't seem ... **to be able to** ... **find** ... your letter in our files.
2. You on me to help with the party.
3. You me a call at home.
4. The builders said that they might work today.
5. When the satellite is launched next week, scientists the rings around Saturn in more detail than ever before.
6. I doubt that he again; his injuries are so severe.
7. We were refused our request, without even our arguments.
8. We outside the cinema, if that's okay with you.

Exercise 26. Ask for permission in these situations. Use **Can I...?**, **Could I...?**, **Can't I ...?** or **Couldn't I...?** (Be careful how you use **my**, **you**, **your**, and **we** in your answers.)

You want ...

1. ... another drink ... **Can I have another drink?** ...
2. ... to leave your books with me. (*be particularly polite*)
3. ... to call your brother from my phone.
4. ... to talk to me about your job application. (*be particularly polite*)
5. ... to park your car on my drive. (*I've already refused once*)
6. ... to ask me exactly what my job is.
7. ... to pick some of the apples off the tree in my garden. (*I've already refused once*)
8. ... to come with me to my summer house. (*I've already refused once*)
9. ... to have the last piece of my birthday cake. (*be particularly polite*)

Exercise 27. Write **was(n't) allowed to/were(n't) allowed to** or **could(n't)**. If either

is possible, write them both.

1. When I was young, children ... **could/ were allowed to** ... leave school when they were 14.
2. Although he didn't have the necessary papers, he enter the country.
3. To the children's surprise, last night they go to the party with their parents.
4. Although I had travelled all day to see him, I speak to the manager.
5. They feared that he would kill again if he go free.
6. She leave school until she had completed her work.
7. When the weeds get out of control, the garden was ruined.
8. I visit Mark in prison, but I send him letters and parcels.
9. The older girls wear lipstick.
10. Before the meeting finished, I give my side of the story.

2. May

The verb '**may**' has two forms: '**may**' for the Present Tense, '**might**' for the Past Tense. The expressions '**to be allowed to**' and '**to be permitted to**' can be used to supply the missing forms of the verb '**may**'.

May expresses:

1. Permission (asking for permission, **giving** or **refusing** it; it depends on the will of the person addressed, *i.e. the speaker gives the permission.*)

- **You may...** is the equivalent of '**I (personally) give you permission**'. '**May**' is more formal, polite and 'respectful' (почтительный; вежливый) than '**can**' and '**could**'. '**Might**' is the most hesitant (колеблющийся; нерешительный, сомневающийся), polite, 'respectful' (почтительный; вежливый), rather old fashioned, rather less common than the other three and is very formal. '**May**' and '**might**' are used to ask for permission when we do not know the other person very well.
- **You can ...** is more general and does not necessarily imply personal permission. Permission is determined by the circumstances. '**Can**' is characteristic of colloquial English and more common.
- We do not use ~~could~~ or ~~might to give permission~~. We do not use ~~could not~~ or ~~might not to refuse~~ permission.

○ Asking for permission (May I ..., Might I...)

- **May I** use the phone, please? – *Certainly.* (= *Will you allow me to use your phone?*)
- **Can I** borrow your pencil? – *Of course.* (*Is it all right if I borrow your pencil?* – informal sentence)
- **Might I** require if you are the owner?
- **May I** interrupt?
- **May I** see the chief now? – **Yes, you may.** Можно сейчас увидеть шефа? – Да
- **Might I** ask the court for an adjournment (отсрочка, перерыв) at this point?
- Excuse me, **could I** leave my coat here?
- A student asks his friend, "Steve, **can I** borrow your book?"
- A student asks his teacher, "Professor, **may I** borrow your book?"
- *Permission* to ask an indiscreet (нескромный, опрометчивый) question may be asked with the formulas '**if I may ask**' and more tentative (неуверенный, осторожный) '**if I might ask**':
 - How much did you pay for this house **if I may ask** /**if I might ask**?
- There is a difference in meaning between '**may**' and '**be allowed to**' in questions.

Study the example:

- **May** I use your fax machine? (= *Will you allow me to use your fax machine?*)
- **Are we allowed to** use the photocopier? (= *What is the rule?*)
- **Are we allowed to** use a dictionary for this test?

○ **Giving permission (may)**

- He is in the room. You **may see** him. Вы **можете** встретиться с ним.
- Johnny **may stay up** (не ложиться спать) late.
- Each player **may choose** five cards.
- You **may watch** TV for as long as you like.
- You **may leave** as soon as you have finished.
- You **may ask** for information here. (*formal – written notice*)

○ **Refusing permission (may not)**

- Visitors **may not enter** the laboratories. (*formal – written notice*)
- Candidates **may not attempt** more than three questions.
- Candidates **may not bring** a calculator into the examination room.

▪ *Permission* from some other authority (авторитетный источник) can be given or refused more emphatically with: '*be allowed to*', '*be permitted to*', and '*be forbidden to*'

- You *are allowed to/are not allowed to smoke* here. = You **can/can't/may/may not smoke** here.
- You *are permitted to/are not permitted to stay* out late. = You **can/can't/may/may not stay** out late.
- You *are forbidden to touch* the statues in the museum. = You **mustn't touch** the statues in the museum.

○ **Talking about permission (might, be allowed, may)**

- Students **are allowed to borrow** books from the library.
 - *In Reported speech:*
- He **told** me that I **might smoke** in the room.
- He **asked** me if he **might join** us. = Он спросил, **можно** ли ему присоединиться к нам.

○ You have to use '*be allowed to*' to supply the missing forms of the verb '**may**', and when the action was permitted and performed.

- Teachers **will be allowed to decide** for themselves. Учителя **смогут решать** сами. (Им будет разрешено.)
- They **haven't been allowed to come**. Им не разрешили прийти.
- Mrs. James is in hospital and **has not been allowed to have** any visitors.

- I **shall be allowed to attend** lectures at the University. Мне **можно будет** посещать лекции в Университете (= разрешат).
- We **were allowed to read** the book in Russian. Нам **можно было** прочитать эту книгу на русском (= разрешили).

2. Prohibition. It is used in negative sentences; '**may not**' = '**are not allowed to**'

- '**may**' in Russian corresponds to '**нельзя**', '**не смей**'
- '**may**' is seldom used to express *prohibition*.
- '**mustn't**', '**can't**', '**don't**' – are often used to express prohibition instead of '**may not**'
 - You **may not go** swimming (= you are not allowed). **Не смей** ходить купаться.
 - You **may not enter** the room until I say so. **Не смей** входить в комнату ...
 - Guests **may not use** the pool (бассейн) after 11 p.m. (formal)
 - You **may not smoke** in the corridors. (formal)
 - **Cf. May I open** the window? - *No, you **may not**.* Нет, **нельзя**; **не смей** (actual prohibition).
 - *No, you **mustn't**.* **Нельзя**, запрещено; **не должен**, **не надо** (отказ в разрешении, prohibition is determined by the circumstances, facts, rules and doesn't depend on the will of the person addressed).
 - *No, you **can't**. I'm sorry, you **can't**.* **Нельзя**, **не надо** (= it is impossible; more colloquial. It denotes *the absence of possibility depending on circumstances, rules, laws, etc.*
 - *No, you **don't, please; I'm afraid not**.* Нет, **не открывай** (it is rather asking somebody not to do something).

3. Request (may I ..., might I ..., may we ..., might we ...)

- '**may**' is more formal and polite than '**can**' and '**could**'
 - **May I trouble** you for the dictionary? – *Certainly.*
 - **May I help** you? – *Of course you **may**.*
 - When **may we leave**? **May we leave** early?
- '**might**' expresses a more polite request and is quite formal; it is used much less frequently than '**can**', '**could**' or '**may**'
 - **Might I use** your telephone? – *Of course you **may**.* (not: – *Of course you **might**.*)
 - **I wonder if I might/could use** your telephone. – *No, you **may not**, I'm afraid.*
 - **Do you think I might/could** borrow your book?
 - **Might I possibly be allowed** to smoke here? (Requests may be overcautious (перестраховочный) or obsequious (подобострастный, раболепный))
- '**may**', '**might**' are used only with **I** or **we** in polite requests
 - **May I have** some coffee? (~~**May you give**~~ me some coffee? – *is incorrect*)
 - **Will you pass** the salt? (~~**May you pass**~~ the salt? – *is incorrect*)
- In practice '**can**', '**could**' and '**may**' are often interchangeable in 'neutral' requests.

- Commonest responses with modals are:

affirmative: ***Of course you can./Of course you may.*** (not: ~~could/might~~)

negative: ***No, you can't/No, you may not.*** (not: ~~could not/might not~~)

- Non-modal responses are:

'Certainly'/'Of course'/'Why not?'/ 'No, I'm afraid you can't.'/'I'm afraid not'/'I'd rather you didn't'

4a. Possibility = general possibility; 'may'; (~~'might'~~ is not used.)

- the action refers ***to the present or future***
- 'may' is used only ***in affirmative sentences*** with the ***Indefinite Infinitive***
- 'might' is used only in ***indirect speech*** (though 'could' is preferable in this case)
- . You **may** see him every morning walking with his child.
- . You **may** still **hear** this expression used by older people.
- . You **may** **order** a taxi by telephone.
- . Over-prescribing of antibiotics **may lead** to the rapid development of resistant strains (стойкое переутомление). (In scientific and academic English we may use 'may' to describe things which are generally possible)
- . He **said** that he **might/could order** a taxi by telephone.
- . He **said** I **might** take his book. Он сказал, что я могу взять его книгу.
- . He **said** that he **might/could trust** her.

4b. Factual, specific possibility; supposition implying doubt (предположение, основанное на неуверенности); uncertainty (сомнение, неуверенность)

- We use 'may'/'might' in ***affirmative and negative sentences*** with ***all forms of the Infinitive***; the ***time reference*** is indicated by the form of the Infinitive; the form 'might' expresses greater doubt and uncertainty
- The meaning is similar to 'it is possible', 'perhaps', 'maybe', 'it is likely'. We use 'may'/'might' to show that something is possible in a ***specific*** situation.
- In this meaning we can also use 'could' (not 'can') in ***affirmative sentences***
- In Russian it corresponds to: ***возможно, может быть; возможно не, может быть не***
- . It **may be true**. or It **might be true**. Возможно, это правда./Это может быть правдой.
- . The weather forecast is not very good. It **may rain** tomorrow (= Perhaps, it will rain tomorrow) Может быть, завтра будет дождь. /Может пойти дождь завтра.
- . He **might come** soon. (= Maybe, he will come soon.) Он, может быть, и придет скоро./Он может прийти завтра.
- . He **may not know** that you are here. (= Perhaps, he doesn't know that you are here) Возможно, он не знает, что вы здесь./Он может не знать, что вы здесь.
- . Where is Bob? – He **may be** in his office. (= perhaps he is in his office)/He **might be having** lunch. (= perhaps he is having lunch)/Ask Ann. She **might know**. (= perhaps she knows)

- The shops **may not/might not be open** today; it's a bank holiday. (= Perhaps, they are not open.)
- We **may go** to Australia next Christmas. (= It is possible that we **will go** to Australia next Christmas.)
- They **may arrive** tomorrow or the day after. Может быть, они придут завтра или послезавтра.
- They **may have arrived** already, I'm not sure. Может быть, они уже и приехали, я не уверен.
- They **may have been discussing the question** for two hours. Может быть, они уже два часа обсуждают вопрос.
- Your friend **might still come**, but I don't think he will. Ваш друг мог бы еще прийти, но я не уверен, что он придет.
- He is in the room. He **may/might be reading**. Он, **возможно**, читает.
- I'm not sure if I'm available; I **may be working** that weekend.
- He **may have been** at home for about two hours. Он, **возможно**, был дома около двух часов.
- She **might have done** it; she had the opportunity and the motive. (= Perhaps she did it; ...)
- He **may not have got** my telegram. **Возможно/может быть**, он не отправил телеграмму.
- We had better phone them, they **might not have heard** the news. (= Perhaps they haven't heard the news.)
- They **may have been discussing** the question for an hour.
- They **may have decided** to stay for the night there.
- He **might not have met** her at the party.
- Where is Mary? – She **may/might have gone** shopping. – She **could have gone** shopping. Она **могла уйти** за покупками. /Она, **возможно**, **ушла** за покупками.
- If it gets colder tomorrow, it **may/might/could snow**.

- In spoken English we often contract '**might not**' to '**mightn't**'. We don't usually contract '**may not**'; the contracted form '**mayn't**' is very rare.

- **might** is normally a little less sure than **may**; **could** is normally less sure than **may** or **might**:

+ + + **may** + + **might** + **could**

- ◆ Sally **may be teaching**. (50% *certain, it's possible that she is teaching.*)
- ◆ You **might need to come** tomorrow. (40 % *certain, perhaps you need to come tomorrow.*)
- ◆ She **could be angry**. (40% *certain, it's possible she is angry.*)

• **Certainty** (несомненный факт) *and* **possibility** (возможность)

a certain fact (точный факт) (expressed by verb tenses)	a possibility/possible/less than certain (expressed by 'may, might, could')
If we are certain of our facts , we can make statements with ' be ' or any full verb: Jane is at home. Jane works at home.	If we are referring to possibility , we can use combinations of ' may, might, could ' + verb: Jane may/might/could be at home. Jane may/might/could work at home.
He is at home.	He may/might/could be at home.

<p>He will be at home tomorrow. He was at home yesterday.</p> <p>He leaves at 9. He will leave tomorrow. He has left. He left last night. He will have left by 9.</p> <p>He is working today. He will be working today. He was working today.</p> <p>He has been working all day. He will have been working all day.</p>	<p>He may/might/could be at home tomorrow. He may/might/could have been at home yesterday.</p> <p>He may/might/could leave at 9. He may/might/could leave tomorrow. He may/might/could have left. He may/might/could have left last night. He may/might/could have left by 9.</p> <p>He may/might/could be working today. He may/might/could be working today. He may/might/could have been working today.</p> <p>He may/might/could have been working all day. He may/might/could have been working all day.</p>
--	---

Note 1: Supposition or uncertainty/possibility **in questions** is rendered by:

- *Is he likely to...?’, ‘Is it likely that he ...?’, ‘Do you think...’*
 - **Is Mary likely to arrive** tonight? Может ли Мэри приехать сегодня вечером?
 - **Is it likely that** Mary will arrive tonight?
 - **Do you think** he has already come? Как ты думаешь, он уже пришел?
- *Can he ... ? Could he ... ? Might he ... ? (Not: may)*
 - I can’t find him anywhere. **Where can/could/might he have gone?**

Note 2: The difference between the meaning of the *negative* forms of ‘**can**’ and ‘**may**’:

<p>1. He may not be ill. = It is possible that he isn’t ill. (Возможно, он не болен.)</p> <p>2. He may not be working. = It is possible that he isn’t working. (Может быть, он не работает.)</p> <p>3. He may not have lost your book. = It is possible that he hasn’t lost your book. (Возможно, он не потерял твою книгу.)</p> <p>4. You might not have seen him. (Возможно, вы его не видели.)</p>	<p>1. He can’t be ill. = It is not possible that he is ill. (Не может быть, что он болен.)</p> <p>2. He can’t be working. = It is impossible that he is working.</p> <p>3. He can’t have lost your book. = It is impossible that he has lost your book. (Не может быть, чтобы он потерял твою книгу.)</p> <p>4. You could not have seen him. He died before you were born. (Вы не могли его видеть. Он умер до того, как вы родились.)</p>
---	--

4c. We use '**might + the Indefinite Infinitive**'/'**could + the Indefinite Infinitive**' to say that it is possible that something will happen

- . Never let your children play with matches. They **might/could start** a fire and burn themselves. ...Они **могут** устроить пожар ...
 - . Make sure you cover electrical sockets when they are not in use. Your children **might/could give** themselves an electric shock.
- We use '**might have + participle II**'/'**could have + participle II**' to say that something was possible in the past but didn't happen
- . Bob drove very carelessly yesterday. He **could/might have had** an accident, but **luckily he didn't**. ...Он **мог** попасть в аварию, ...
 - . The child **might/could have got lost** but in fact he came home earlier than others. Ребенок **мог** заблудиться, но на самом деле он пришел домой раньше, чем все остальные.

5. Reproach, disapproval, criticism.

- Only '**might**' is used, in *affirmative* sentences.
- In Russian '**might**' corresponds to '**мог бы**'
- **might + the Indefinite Infinitive** expresses a mild reproach, a kind of request, some hypothetical wish (*present or future reference*)
 - . You **might offer** your help. **Могли бы предложить** свою помощь. (*present or future reference*)
 - . You **might pay** more attention to your lessons. Ты бы мог уделять больше внимания своим занятиям.
 - **might + the Perfect Infinitive** expresses a reproach about something that has not been done and it renders irritation (annoyance) (*past reference*)
 - . You **might have bought** her flowers. **Вы могли бы купить** ей цветы. (*past reference*)
 - . You are becoming forgetful. You **might have reminded** me about it.
 - . You **might have gone** to see your sister when she was in trouble. Ты мог бы поехать навестить свою сестру, когда у нее были неприятности.

6. Suggestion. We use '**you might**', followed by a verb meaning '*like*', '*want*' to make a suggestion in a very polite way.

- . I thought perhaps you **might like to come** along with me.
 - . You **might want to try** another shop.
- We can also use '**It might be**', followed *by a noun-group or an adjective and 'to-infinitive'*.
- . I think it **might be a good idea to stay** there.

- It **might** be wise to get a new car.

7. 'Might' expresses unreality in Conditional sentences

- If you **tried**, you **might get** the book. Если бы вы постарались, вы бы, может быть, достали книгу. (*present or future reference*)
- If I **knew** them better, I **might invite** them to dinner.
- If she **had been** there, she **might have helped** us. Если бы она была там, она, может быть, помогла бы нам. (*past reference*)
- If we **had taken** the other road, we **might have arrived** earlier. Если бы мы поехали по другой дороге, мы, возможно, приехали бы раньше. (*past reference*)

8. 'may (just) as well' and 'might (just) as well' can be used interchangeably to express the idea 'it makes no difference'/we use these phrases with other persons to suggest or recommend an action :

- It's not very far, so we **may/might as well go** on foot. Это недалеко, поэтому мы, пожалуй, можем/могли бы пойти пешком. (*it makes no difference*)
- I **may as well take** the child with me. Я, пожалуй, возьму ребенка с собой./Пожалуй, лучше будет, если я возьму ребенка с собой.
- The buses are so expensive these days; you **might as well get** a taxi. (= taxis are just as good, no more expensive) (... вы с таким же успехом могли бы взять такси)
- If your mother has made up her mind, my dear, you **may/might just as well give in** without any fuss. Если твоя мама приняла решение, моя дорогая, тебе, пожалуй, лучше/было бы лучше уступить без возражений.
- I **might as well stay** at home tonight.
- He **might as well take** the car. Пожалуй, было бы лучше, если бы он взял машину.

○ 'may as well', 'might as well' can differ as follows:

- Shall we walk or take a bus? – We **may/might as well walk**. (i.e. it makes no difference.)
- What a slow bus this is! – Yes, **we might (not: may) just as well walk**. ... мы могли бы, пожалуй, идти пешком. (i.e. we would get there more quickly)

9. 'may well'; 'might well'; 'could well' (= 'it is extremely likely' очень вероятно) can be used interchangeably.

- He **may/might/could well find** that the course is too difficult.

10. It might have been worse. Могло бы быть и хуже. (Set phrase)

11. If I may say so. – in this phrase the meaning of permission is considerably weakened

- If I **may say so**, I think you have treated him very badly.

Exercises

Exercise 28. Comment on the meaning of the verb **may/might**. Translate the sentences into Russian.

1. He might have missed the train. 2. She may not have received the letter. 3. May I come in? 4. You might have told me earlier about it. 5. You may take any book you like. 6. Don't worry about her. She may be at her friend's house now. 7. I am sure you will soon hear from her. She may just be writing to you now. 8. You may think whatever you like. 9. The telegram may have been sent yesterday. 10. Nobody else is going to turn up now, so you may as well go home. 11. Look into the canteen. He may be having a snack there now. 12. He may have tried to convince them but failed. 13. You might have treated him better. 14. 'I'll go on Monday by a slow train.' – 'You might just as well wait till Tuesday and go by the fast train.' 15. We aren't sure what we are going to do tomorrow. We might go to the beach. (= Perhaps we will go to the beach.) 16. Where was Sally last night? – I think she may have been at the theatre. (= I think perhaps she was at the theatre.) 17. She walked straight past me without saying hello. – She might not have seen you. (= Perhaps she didn't see you.) 18. You were stupid to try to climb that tree. You might have killed yourself. 19. Shall we get a taxi or wait for a bus? – We might as well wait for the bus. We're not in a hurry, are we? 20. It may be necessary to call a doctor. 21. It is not very far, so we may/might as well go on foot. 22. There might have been someone waiting outside. 23. There might have been a strike. 24. Each player may choose five cards. (permission; rule-making, e.g. for games)

Exercise 29. Read the following situations and **ask for, give or refuse permission**, as in the example.

1. Your best friend wants to wear your leather jacket but you are going to wear it yourself. What do you say?...***I'm sorry but you can't wear my leather jacket....***
2. You want to borrow your father's car for the evening. You ask him and he agrees. What does he say?
3. You are on a train and you want someone to help you with your luggage. You ask the inspector. What do you say?
4. You are in a shop and want to try on a pair of trousers. What do you say to the shop assistant?
5. You are on a plane and you are listening to your walkman. After a while, a flight attendant tells you that you are not allowed to use your walkman. What does he/she say?

Exercise 30. There are mistakes in some of these sentences. Find the mistakes and correct them. (**permission**)

1. 'Can I use your car this evening?' 'Yes, of course, you could.'
2. The law says that you might not drive a car in Britain without a seat belt.
3. 'May I ask you for a favour?' 'Of course, you can.'

4. 'Could I borrow your dictionary?' 'Yes, of course, you might.
5. My brother may borrow my sister's computer any time he wants to.
6. You can have a look at my newspaper if you like.
7. My sister's daughter could stay up late and watch the World Cup on TV last night.
8. I was allowed to see him for a moment yesterday.

Exercise 31. Write these sentences in a different way using **may** or **might**.

1. Perhaps Margaret is in her office. ... ***She might be in her office.*** ...
2. Perhaps Margaret is busy.
3. Perhaps she is working.
4. Perhaps she wants to be alone.
5. Perhaps she was ill yesterday.
6. Perhaps she went home early.
7. Perhaps she had to go home early.
8. Perhaps she was working yesterday.

*In sentences 9-11 use **may not** or **might not***

9. Perhaps she doesn't want to see me.
10. Perhaps she isn't working today.
11. Perhaps she wasn't feeling well yesterday.

Exercise 32. What do you think? Write your opinions about the statements.

Example: *It'll rain tomorrow.* → ***Yes, I think it will. / No, I don't think it will. / I'm not sure. It might.***

1. The next leader of your country will be a woman.
2. You will go to the cinema this month.
3. You will receive a letter this week.
4. The price of your favourite drink will go up this year.
5. Someone will ask you a difficult question today.
6. You will eat in a restaurant next week.
7. There will be some very good news tomorrow.
8. You will go to a party this weekend.
9. The weather will be better next month than it is now.
10. You will listen to music this evening.

Exercise 33. Complete the sentences with a verb in the correct form.

1. 'Where's Bob?' 'I'm not sure. He might ... ***be having*** ... lunch.'
2. 'Who is that man with Ann?' 'I'm not sure. It might her brother.'
3. 'Who was the man we saw with Ann yesterday?' 'I'm not sure. It might her brother.'
4. 'Why are those people waiting in the street?' 'I don't know. They mightfor a bus

5. 'Shall I buy this book for Tim?' 'You'd better not. He might already.....it.'

Exercise 34. Answer the following questions with suitable suggestions, using **may** (or **might**) and the words in brackets.

- 1 Terry: Why is John wearing sunglasses? It's not sunny.
You: (have some problem with his eyes) ***He may have some problems with his eyes.*** ...
- 2 Jill: Why didn't Jane come to the party last night?
You: (have a row with her boyfriend) ... ***She might have had a row with her boyfriend.*** ...
- 3 Sue: Why is Alan in such a bad mood today?
You: (sleep badly last night)
- 4 Roy: Why is Shelley looking under the desk?
You: (drop something)
- 5 Jill: Where can I have put my bag?
You: (be under the bed)
- 6 Zoe: Why hasn't anybody said 'Happy Birthday' to me?
You: (plan a surprise)
- 7 Tim: Why does Henry look so miserable?
You: (have some bad news)
- 8 Ella: Why isn't Sophie in the office today?
You: (work at home)
- 9 John: Why didn't Rosemary come to the cinema last night?
You: (feel tired)

Exercise 35. Read the situations and make sentences from the words in brackets. Use **may** or **might**.

1. I can't find George anywhere. I wonder where he is.
 - a. (he / go / shopping) ...***He may have gone shopping.***....
 - b. (he / play / tennis) ...***He might be playing tennis.***....
2. I'm looking for Helen. Do you know where she is?
 - a. (she / watch / TV / in her room)
 - b. (she / go / out)
3. I can't find my umbrella. Have you seen it?
 - a. (it / be / in the car)
 - b. (you / leave / in the restaurant last night)
4. Why didn't Tom answer the doorbell? I'm sure he was in the house at the time.
 - a. (he / be / in the bath)
 - b. (he/not/ hear/the bell)

Exercise 36. Complete the sentences using **might not** or **couldn't**.

1. A: Do you think she saw you?

- B: No, she was too far away. ... ***She couldn't have seen me.*** ...
2. A: I wonder why she didn't say hello. Perhaps she didn't see me.
B: That's possible. ...***She might not have seen you.***
3. A: I wonder why Ann didn't come to the party. Perhaps she wasn't invited.
B: Yes, it's possible. She
4. A: Tom loves parties. I'm sure he would have come to the party if he'd been invited.
B: I agree. He
5. A: I wonder how the fire started. Do you think it was an accident?
B: No, the police say it
6. A: How did the fire start? I suppose it was an accident.
B: Well, the police aren't sure. They say it

Exercise 37. Complete the sentences using **might be able to** or **might have to + a suitable verb**.

- I can't help you but why don't you ask Jill? She ... ***might be able to help...*** you.
- I can't meet you this evening but I you tomorrow evening.
- I'm not working on Saturday but I on Sunday.
- George isn't well. He to hospital for an operation.

Exercise 38. Write sentences with **may not** or **might not**.

- (I don't know if Ann will come to the party.) ...***Ann might not come to the party....***
- (I don't know if I'll go out this evening.) I
- (I don't know if Tom will like the present I bought for him.) Tom
- (I don't know if Sue will be able to meet us this evening.)

Exercise 39. Read the situations and make sentences with **may/might as well**.

- You and a friend have just missed the bus. The buses run every hour.
You say: We'll have to wait an hour for the next bus.***We might as well walk....***
- You have a free ticket for a concert. You're not very keen on the concert but you decide to go. *You say:* I to the concert. It's a pity to waste a free ticket.
- You're in a cafe with a friend. You've finished your drinks. It's a nice cafe and there is no reason to go now, so why not have another drink?
You say: We What would you like?
- You and a friend are at home. You are bored. There's a film on TV starting in a few minutes.
You say: There's nothing else to do.

Exercise 40. Match column A to column B, then ask and answer questions, as in the example.

A	B
1. Tell someone where you are travelling to.	a. You could have trouble finding a place to stay.
2. Have some of the local currency with you.	b. Someone might steal them or you might lose them.
3. Reserve a hotel room before you leave.	c. You might have to prove your identity.
4. Don't take any valuables with you.	d. They might need to contact you.
5. Always carry your passport with you.	e. You might not find banks open when you arrive.

Example: 1. - d. – Tell someone where you are travelling to.

– Why?

– They might need to contact you.

Exercise 41. Translate the following sentences into English using ‘may’ in all of its possible meanings.

1. Ты не был так уж сильно занят. Ты мог бы нам помочь. 2. Спроси его, можно ли нам осмотреть лабораторию. 3. Он мог бы сделать это для вас. Ему это совсем не трудно. 4. Он чуть не разбил окно. 5. Она, может быть, опоздает. 6. Они, возможно, работают над этой же проблемой. 7. К вечеру может пойти дождь. 8. Их, возможно, не было вчера в городе. 9. Они, возможно, подумали, что мы не придем в такой дождь. 10. Я согласен, что разрешить Питеру поехать за границу, возможно, было ошибкой. Но я думал, что это, может быть, вернет его к работе. 11. Я, может быть, не упоминал об этом в своих письмах, но я проделал там довольно большую работу. 12. Не увидев ни своего отца, ни мальчика, Мегги подумала, что они, быть может, переставляют книги на полках. 13. Вы, возможно, слышали его имя. 14. Мне пришло в голову, что он втайне гордился сыном, хотя он, быть может, и не знал этого. 15. У него большая семья. Я могу себе представить, что он, возможно, ищет себе работу получше. 16. У меня было впечатление, что гроза может разразиться в любой момент. 17. Она не была шведкой, но ее можно было принять за шведку. 18. Может быть, он сейчас в гостинице и ждет меня. 19. Я чуть не опоздал на последний автобус.

Exercise 42. Translate the following sentences into English using ‘can’ (‘could’) and ‘may’ (‘might’).

1. Может быть, пойдет дождь. 2. Может быть, дождя не будет. 3. Не может быть, чтобы пошел дождь. 4. Неужели будет дождь? 5. Может быть, он уже видел их. 6. Может быть, он не видел их. 7. Не может быть, чтобы он видел их. 8. Просто не может быть, чтобы он видел их. 9. Неужели он видел их? 10. И где это он мог их видеть? 11. Может быть, они ждут нас. 12. Может быть, они не

ждут нас. 13. Не может быть, чтобы они ждали нас. 14. Неужели они ждут нас? 15. И кого это они могут ждать? 16. Просто не может быть, чтобы они ждали нас. 17. Я, пожалуй, пойду. 18. Я, пожалуй, лучше останусь дома. 19. Я чуть не потерял ключи. 20. Все могло бы быть гораздо хуже. 21. Погода – хуже некуда. 22. Мне ничего не оставалось делать, как остаться с ними. 23. Я не мог не согласиться с ними. 24. Мне это совершенно безразлично.

Exercise 43. *Where necessary, suggest a correction for these sentences, or put a ✓.*

1. I think I saw her go out, so she mightn't be at home.
2. It mightn't be true. There must be some mistake.
3. It's snowing heavily in Scotland so it can take Hugh a long time to get here.
4. If we don't get to the market soon, they can't have any flowers left. They will all have been sold.
5. If you're free at the moment, we may have a job for you.
6. May you be given the job permanently?
7. I thought they were on holiday - but I can be wrong, of course.
8. I might go out later if the weather improves.
9. Children may enter only when accompanied by an adult.
10. 'I've had this birthday card, but it doesn't say who sent it.' 'May it be from Ron?'

Exercise 44. *Which one means the same as the sentence given, (a) or (b)? (can't, mightn't)*

1. It's possible that they don't live here any longer.
a. They **mightn't live** here any longer. b. They **can't live** here any longer.
2. It isn't possible that they are twins.
a. They **mightn't be** twins. b. They **can't be** twins.
3. It could be that they are not married.
a. They **mightn't be married**. b. They **can't be married**.

Exercise 45. *Which sentence, (a) or (b), is most likely to follow the one given?*

1. Don't throw the picture away, give it to Tony.
a. He **might have liked** it. b. He **might like** it.
2. When she went out this morning, she left her briefcase here.
a. She **might have meant** to leave it behind. b. She **might mean** to leave it behind.
3. Nobody knows where the jewels have gone.
a. They **might have been stolen**. b. They **might be stolen**.
4. Don't throw away the rest of the meat.
a. We **might have wanted** it for dinner. b. **We might want** it for dinner.
5. Don't wait for me.
a. I **might have been** a few minutes late. b. I **might be** a few minutes late.

Exercise 46. *Underline the word or words that are possible in each sentence. (can, could, may, might)*

1. 'Do you know where Mark left the car keys?' 'He ***might/can* have left** them on the table.
2. If Jerry hadn't grabbed my arm, I ***may/might* have fallen** off the bridge.
3. They ***might/could* have chosen** anyone for the job, but they picked me.
4. I ***could/may* have stayed** overnight with Don and Mary, but I thought I should get home as soon as possible.
5. In factories in the 19th century, a worker ***could/may* be dismissed** for being ill.
6. I ***may/could* have cleaned** the house by the time you get home.
7. By the end of the day I ***can/may* have finished** painting the walls. Tomorrow I'll start on the ceiling.
8. It ***can/could* be possible** one day to detect disease simply by looking at people's eyes.

Exercise 47. *Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Use can or may. (Possibility)*

Example: It is sometimes very hot here in the summer. → **It *can be* very hot here in the summer.**

1. Perhaps it will be very hot here tomorrow. → It
2. Perhaps I am wrong. → I
3. It is possible for anyone to be wrong. → Anyone
4. Cats sometimes live for 20 years. → Cats
5. Perhaps your cat will live for 20 years. → Your cat

3. Must

The modal verb **must** has only one form. The expressions ‘**to have to**’ or ‘**to be obliged to**’ (быть обязанным) (US: *to be obligated to*) can be used to supply the missing tense forms of the verb **must**. **Must** may also be used *in indirect speech* after the verb in the past tense in the principal clause.

Must expresses:

1. Strong obligation (обязанность; долг; обязательность), **necessity, duty** (долг, обязательство) **to do something**. We generally use ‘**must**’ when the speaker has decided that something is necessary.

- **must** expresses *an obligation from the speaker’s point of view, an obligation imposed* (навязанный) *by the speaker*; **must** is used to give *a strong personal opinion*
- **must** is used in affirmative, negative, interrogative sentences
- **must** is used with **the Indefinite Infinitive**
- **must** corresponds to the Russian: **должен, надо, нужно, необходимо** (you are obliged to do something)

- . I **must pay** the electricity bill today.
- . **Must** you really **go** so soon? – Yes, I **must**.
- . Do it if you **must**. Если нужно, делайте.
- . Your education **must not be** sketchy (поверхностным).
- . You **must not leave** the room before the end of the test.
- . James said we **must invite** the Stewards to dinner.
- . I knew I **must go** there too.
- . You **must keep** it a secret. You **mustn’t tell** anybody else (= **do not tell** anybody else; it is necessary that you do not do it).

- **must** expresses a strong obligation and we do not often use it in face-to-face conversation as it can seem impolite and often inappropriate. We often use **should** and **ought to** as an alternative to **must** as they express a subjective (often moral) obligation felt by the speaker, but the obligation is weaker than with **must**

- . You **should treat** your neighbours with more respect.

- We only use **must** to talk about *the present* and *the future*. When we talk about *past obligation* or *necessity*, we use **had to**. *Future obligation* can be made more precise with the Future Indefinite of the verb **have to**.

- . I **had to work** hard yesterday. Я должен был/пришлось работать много вчера.
- . I’ll **have to read** it again.
- . We **shall have to give** you a new copy of the book.

- Absence of necessity is expressed by **needn’t**

- **needn’t** = не нужно, нет необходимости

- . **Must** you really **go** so soon? – **No, I needn't.**
- . We **needn't hurry**, we've got plenty of time (= it is not necessary to hurry)
- **Must** has no infinitive, - ing form or Participle II. So when necessary, we make this form with **have to**.
 - . He hates **having to get** up early.
 - . She **has had to work** hard all her life. Она должна (приходится) работать много всю жизнь.
 - . Because of the bus strike **I've been having to walk** to work every day.
 - . If he had asked me, **I would have had to tell** him the truth. Если бы он меня спросил, я должен был бы сказать ему правду.
 - . The reason for our late arrival was that **we had had to wait** for hours while they checked the plane before take-off.

2. Prohibition; refusing permission

- **must** is used in negative sentences
- **must** corresponds to the Russian: не должен, нельзя, не разрешается = **do not do this!**
- **must** = it is forbidden/prohibited to do something; you are not allowed to do something; it is against the rules/laws
- it is not the person who prohibits the action but there are rules or circumstances prohibiting it (in e.g. public notices, documents)
- **mustn't** = it is important that something is not done or does not happen
 - . You **mustn't talk** with your mouth full.
 - . Cars **must not be parked** in front of this gate.
 - . You **mustn't touch** the statues. (it is forbidden)
 - . You **mustn't do** that! Не делайте этого!
 - . You **mustn't come** into the ward (больничная палата), it's against the rules.
 - . You **mustn't drive** if you haven't got a driving licence.
 - . He told me I **mustn't cry**.

3. Command, urgent (настоячивая) (emphatic настоячивая, настоятельная) request, command in public notices (объявление; афиша; записка) or documents

- . You **must do** as you are told.
- . Guests **must be** out of the building before midnight.
- **Must** is used interchangeably with '**to be to**' for instructions on notices or order (**must** is preferable)
 - . All rooms **must be vacated** (освобождать, покидать) by 11 a.m. and the keys handed to the porter on the day of the departure.

- Applications for admission to the Students' Room of the Department of Manuscripts **must be accompanied** by a letter of recommendation (= letter of reference рекомендательное письмо, рекомендация).
- Passengers **must cross** the lines by the footbridge. (the railway company instructs them to)

4. Supposition bordering on assurance (уверенность, убежденность), **almost a conviction** (убеждение) / **probability** (вероятность) / **near certainty** (почти несомненный факт; уверенность) / **logical assumption** (логическое предположение) / **deduction** (логический вывод)

- **must** is used with **all forms of the Infinitive**; (95% certain)
- **must** is used only in *affirmative sentences*
- the action refers to the **present or past**
- **must** corresponds to the Russian: должно быть, вероятно, наверняка, вряд ли, по всей вероятности
- **must (= supposition)** has the same meaning as *the modal words*: **probably, evidently**
- **must (= logical assumption/deduction)** = **I am sure/I am certain/I have no doubt that something is true.**

- She **must be lonely**. (= Probably she is lonely.) Она, должно быть, одинока.
- You've been travelling all day, you **must be exhausted**! (=...I'm sure you are exhausted.)
- She **must know** the answer. Она, должно быть, знает ответ.
- John isn't here. He **must be working** in the garden. (...I'm sure he is working ...)
- You want to borrow more money from me? You **must be joking**!
- Where's Nell? – She **must be sightseeing** now. (=She is probably sightseeing.)
- He **must have known** about it yesterday. (=I'm sure he knew about it yesterday.)
- He **must have been playing** the piano for an hour.

- We use **must** and **can't/couldn't** to express **the logical conclusion of the situation (logical assumption/deduction)**: we don't have all the facts, so we are not absolutely sure, but we believe something to be true because of evidence, i.e. we are making a logical deduction.
- **must = logically probable**
- **can't = logically improbable**
- We **must have taken** the wrong road. (=I'm sure we have taken the wrong road.)
- We **can't have taken** the wrong road. (=I'm sure we haven't taken the wrong road.)
- She **must have gone** to a party. (= I'm sure she has gone to a party.)
- She **can't have gone** to a party. (= I'm sure she hasn't gone to a party.)
- Suzie **can't have** a ten-year old daughter! She's only twenty five herself!
- Is there no reply? They **must be** in bed. They **can't be** out at this time of night.

• A walk in this weather! You **must be joking!**

○ **Supposition** referring *to the future* is expressed by the modal words and modal expressions:

- **probably** – вероятно, наверное
- **evidently** – очевидно; несомненно; явно
- **to be sure (bound/certain) to do something** (= something is definitely going to happen) – обязательно, непременно, бесспорно, несомненно

• He **will probably come** tomorrow. Он, вероятно, /наверное, придет завтра.

• **Evidently he won't make** a report. Он, очевидно, не сделает доклад (сообщение).

• He **is sure to come**. Он обязательно придет.

• **Something is bound to happen**. Что-то обязательно/непременно должно произойти. (= I'm sure something will happen.)

• This fire **is certain to produce** a panic in the morning. Этот пожар, бесспорно, вызовет утро панику.

○ In negative sentences **supposition** is expressed in different ways:

• **Evidently**, the child doesn't sleep. Ребенок, должно быть, **не** спит.

• The child **is probably** not asleep. Ребенок, должно быть, **не** спит.

• The child **must have woken up**. Ребенок, должно быть, **не** спит.

• The child **must be awake** already. Ребенок, должно быть, **не** спит.

• She **must have failed to see** him. Она, должно быть, **не** видела его.

• He **must have misunderstood** you. Он, должно быть, **не** понял тебя.

• They **must have been inattentive**. Они, должно быть, были невнимательны.

• He **must have had no chance to warn** you. У него, вероятно, **не** было шанса предупредить вас.

• The letter **must have never reached** them. Письмо, должно быть, **так и не** дошло до них.

• **No one must have seen** him before.

• The letter **must have been left unanswered**.

• He **must be quite unaware** of the circumstances. Он, должно быть, **не** совсем понимал условия.

• He **can't have recognised** me then. (= I'm sure he didn't recognise me then.)
Вряд ли он меня узнал тогда. /Не может быть, что он узнал меня тогда. / Должно быть, он **не** узнал меня тогда

5. Invitations, strong recommendations, emphatic advice. We use '**must**' in invitations, for strong recommendations and emphatic advice

○ **must** is used in **pressing** (настойчивый, настоятельный) **invitations**, such as:

• **You really must come** and see me some time.

• **You must come** and have dinner with me.

• **You must come** and stay with us for a weekend

○ **must** is used to give **strong recommendations, emphatic advice**, such as:

- **You really must take** a holiday this year.
- **You mustn't eat** too many sweets.
- You **must do** something about that cough. Please go and see the doctor.

6. Notice the following set phrases with 'must':

- **I must be going = I must be off** (= it's time for me to go) Мне пора уходить.
- **I must tell you that ...** (The meaning of obligation is considerably weakened in '*must*'))

7. 'must' in Indirect Speech

○ **must** can express *past time* only **in indirect speech**

- The mother told her boy that he **must go** to bed.
- He told me that he **had to go** to bed early as he felt very tired.
- He told us we **must wait** (or we **had to wait**) until we were called.
- She asked her boss if she **must work** (or **had to work**) overtime.
- When referring *to the past*, **must** can remain unchanged **in indirect speech** when it is used to indicate inescapable (неизбежный, неминуемый) obligation or we can use **had to** (the past of **have to**) in its place:
 - "I **must warn** you of the consequences," he said. → He told me he **must warn/had to warn** me of the consequences.
- **Must**, indicating *future necessity*, can remain unchanged, or can be replaced by **would have to** or sometimes **had to**:
 - "You **must go** early tomorrow," she said. → She said they **must go** early the next day. (or She said they **would have to go** early the next day. or She said they **had to go** early the next day.)
- When **must** is used to indicate *supposition bordering on assurance or logical assumption*, it remains unchanged **in indirect speech**. It **cannot** be replaced by **had to**:
 - "George **must be** a fool to behave like that," he said. → He said George **must be** a fool to behave like that.
- **Mustn't** (*prohibition*) remains unchanged or changes to **couldn't**:
 - "You **mustn't/can't cross** the border," the guard said. → The guard said we **mustn't/couldn't cross** the border.

Exercises

Exercise 48. *Comment on the meaning of the verb **must**. Translate the sentences into Russian.*

1. You must talk to your daughter about her future. 2. You mustn't go home alone. It is very dark. 3. The electricity must always be switched off before repairs are attempted. 4. You must come to our party. 5. You must see a doctor right away. 6. A man must stand up for his rights. 7. You mustn't think it's so very easy. 8. Must it be done before tomorrow? 9. The only thing he knew for certain was that he must not meet Antonia. 10. Give him something to eat. He must be hungry. 11. That fellow must be made of steel. He's never tired. 12. You must have frightened her. 13. That fellow has seen and felt ten times as much as I, although he must be ten years younger. 14. I hear somebody's steps on the stairs. She must be coming! 15. Judging from the books and papers on his writing-table he must have been working for several hours. 16. He must have been a sailor in his youth. 17. You must have misunderstood him, my dear. He can't have intended to say that. 18. It's the third time she's been skating this week – she must really enjoy it. 19. The film must be worth seeing. 20. They must be still arguing. 21. Hard work must have told on his health. 22. You must be joking. 23. He told us we must wait (*or* we had to wait) until we were called. 24. She asked her boss if she must work (*or* had to work) overtime. 25. You must phone home at once. It's urgent. 26. You really must come and see us some day. 27. Life belts must not be removed. (public notices; documents; 'must not' – in full.)

Exercise 49. *Write comments with **must** after the following sentences.*

- 1 You haven't eaten the whole day./ (you/starving) ...You **must be starving**.....
2. They've been travelling all night./ (they /tired out)
3. He's passed his exam./ (he/delighted)
4. Your wife is in hospital./ (you/very worried)
5. Your son has won a scholarship./ (you /very proud of him)

Exercise 50. *Rewrite the parts in bold using **must have**.*

1. He drove all the way from Glasgow. Obviously it was a long journey.
..... **It must have been a long journey.**
2. He pretended to be innocent, but I'm sure he did it.
3. George was standing very close to you. Of course you saw him.
4. You look very well. It seems you enjoyed your holiday.
5. There's nobody in. Probably they've gone shopping.
6. My coat isn't there. Perhaps someone has taken it by mistake.

Exercise 51. *Rewrite the sections in bold using **can't**.*

1. She looks so young. I'm sure she's not thirty yet. ... ***She can't be thirty yet.***
2. It's still quite early. I'm sure it's not ten o'clock.
3. She doesn't look at all like Mary. I'm sure she isn't her sister.
4. He's been very ill lately. He's probably not very well even now.
5. There's no answer. They're probably not in.
6. If you live near Coventry, you aren't very far from Birmingham.
7. He looks very ill. I'm sure he's not feeling very well.

Exercise 52. Complete the sentences. Use **must** or **can't** and the correct form of the verb in brackets. (**Logical assumption**)

1. You haven't eaten all day. You hungry. (*be*)
2. You cold. It's 30 degrees in the shade! (*be*)
3. There are no lights on in the office. Everyone home. (*go*)
4. Peter ill. I've just seen him playing tennis. (*be*)
5. I my bag on the train. I can remember having it with me when I got off the train. (*leave*)
6. You drove home at night without any lights on? You crazy! (*be*)
7. 'I've just finished reading *War and Peace* in Russian.' 'That a long time!' (*take*)

Exercise 53. Complete the sentences with **must**, **mustn't** or **needn't**.

1. We haven't got much time. We ... **must** ... hurry.
2. We've got plenty of time. We ... **needn't** ... hurry.
3. We have enough food at home so we go shopping today.
4. Jim gave me a letter to post. I remember to post it.
5. Jim gave me a letter to post. I forget to post it.
6. There's plenty of time for you to make up your mind. You decide now.
7. You wash those tomatoes. They've already been washed.
8. This is a valuable book. You look after it carefully and you lose it.
9. 'What sort of house do you want to buy? Something big?' 'Well, it be big - that's not important. But it have a nice garden - that's essential.'

Exercise 54. Underline the correct word(s), as in the example. (**Asking For/Giving and Refusing Permission**).

1. A: We **could**/**were allowed to** leave work early yesterday. ... **were allowed to** ...
B: Really? That's nice.
2. A: Excuse me. **May**/**Mustn't** I ask you a question?
B: Yes, of course.
3. A: **Might**/**Must** I use your telephone, please?
B: I'm sorry. It's out of order.

4. A: Mum, could I go out with James tonight?
B: Yes, of course you **can/could**.
5. A: **Are we allowed to/Must** we use the Internet?
B: Yes, providing it's for work purposes.
6. A: **Can I /Am I allowed to** borrow your ruler, Pam?
B: Sure. Here you are.
7. A: Excuse me, sir. Visitors **may not/couldn't** park here, I'm afraid.
B: Oh, I'm sorry. Where can I park instead?
8. A: Alison, you **mustn't/might not** touch those files.
B: I didn't know that.

Exercise 55. Choose the correct form of the verbs.

1. You **must be / can't be** very proud of your son winning so many prizes.
2. We thought our cousins would visit us when they were in town last week, but they didn't even phone. I suppose they **must be / must have been** too busy.
3. The film has been such a big success I guess it **must be / can't be** easy to get tickets to see it.
4. I'm sure you could mend this if you really tried. You **must be using / can't be using** the right tools.
5. I've just rung the garage to check whether they've fixed my car, but I can't get an answer. I suppose they **may have / may be having** a tea-break out in the yard.
6. I don't know why you wanted to stay at that party. You **might have enjoyed / can't have enjoyed** talking to all those boring people.
7. I can't go out this morning. We're getting a new sofa and the store **may be delivering / must be delivering** it today.
8. You'll have to check these figures again. They're not accurate. You **might have been concentrating / can't have been concentrating** when you added them up.
9. You **must be / must have been** thirsty after carrying those heavy boxes. Shall I make some tea?

Exercise 56. Complete the conversations with suitable verbs.

1. Juan: Maria says her father's a farmer.
Paul: But he can't ... **be**... ! They live in the middle of Madrid.
2. Jane: Oh, no. This carrier bag's split.
Kate: You must ... **have put** ... too much in it. They're not very strong, you know.
3. Mark: Nigel says he met your sister in Berlin.
Amy: But he can't her there! She's never been to Germany.
4. Jim: Where can I find out about visas for the US?
Joe: Ann might about that sort of thing. She used to work in a travel agency.
5. Gary: This letter says you owe the bank £5,000.
Philip: It must a mistake. I don't even have a bank account.
6. Sue: Shall we go to the concert?

- Beth: I'd like to, but you'd better phone first. They may all the tickets.
7. Bert: Do you know where my address book is?
- May: It could in the hall cupboard. I think I saw it there the other day.
8. Dave: Why didn't Sally come to work in her car today?
- Tony: She didn't say. She could it to her sister, I suppose.

Exercise 57. Find the right response. Match a sentence on the left with a response on the right. (**must, might**)

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. I haven't eaten since breakfast. | a. You must be tired. |
| 2. I've got a really sore throat. | b. The battery might be flat. |
| 3. I can't stop singing and dancing. | c. You must be hungry. |
| 4. I can't get the car to start. | d. You might be getting a cold, |
| 5. I've been working all night. | e. You must be in love. |

Exercise 58. Translate the following sentences into English. (**must**)

1. Я должна прочесть эту книгу. 2. Она, должно быть, читает эту книгу. 3. Доктор сказал, что он должен жить на юге. 4. Он, должно быть, живет на юге. 5. Мы должны поговорить с ней. 6. Должно быть, он разговаривает по-английски. 7. Должно быть, он хорошо знает английский язык. 8. Должно быть, он еще здесь. 9. Она, должно быть, ждет нас в институте. 10. Она должна ждать нас в институте. 11. По-видимому, он унес бумаги с собой. 12. Должно быть, они тогда жили здесь. 13. Должно быть, идет дождь. 14. Вероятно, дождь уже прекратился. 15. Он должен мне читать вслух, чтобы исправить свое произношение. 16. Он, должно быть, много читает вслух. У него хорошее произношение. 17. Не шумите: дети, должно быть, спят.

Exercise 59. Translate the following sentences into English.

Note: Remember that **must** in the meaning of supposition is not used in the negative.

1. Там, должно быть, никого нет. 2. Он, должно быть, ничего не понял и обиделся. 3. Она, наверное, не помнит, что обещала принести нам карту Москвы. 4. Она, наверное, оставила дверь незапертой. 5. Вы, наверное, не встречали такого забавного мальчишки, как наш Тим. 6. Вам, должно быть, нелегко этому поверить. 7. Дети, должно быть, не заметили, что уже стемнело. 8. Он, наверняка, ничего об этом не знает. 9. Она, наверное, совсем неопытна в переводе медицинских статей с русского на английский. 10. Это, должно быть, кажется вам невероятным, но это факт. 11. Он, должно быть, не узнал вас в толпе.

Exercise 60. Translate the following negative sentences into English.

Model 1: *She must have given him no opportunity to object.* Она, должно быть, не дала ему возможности возразить.

1. Должно быть, он не сделал ошибки. 2. Должно быть, они не обедали. 3. Должно быть, она не имела опыта. 4. Должно быть, он не дал ответа. 5. Должно быть, она не обращает внимания на это. 6. Должно быть, у них нет книг. 7. Он, должно быть, не получил ответа. 8. Она, должно быть, не старалась (make attempt) сделать это правильно.

Model 2: *Probably he didn't know about it.* Должно быть, он об этом **не** знал.

1. Должно быть, они еще не пришли. 2. Вероятно, они этого не знают. 3. По-видимому, это не было сделано вовремя. 4. Вероятно, это не здесь. 5. Это, должно быть, не заняло много времени. 6. Должно быть, он придет завтра.

Exercise 61. *Translate the following sentences into English using 'must' in all of its meanings.*

1. Я должен работать изо всех сил эту неделю. 2. Милли ведь видела их. Она, должно быть, сказала вам об этом. 3. Он должен попасть туда до 8-ми часов. 4. Она разожгла камин и сказала: «Ну, садись же. Ты, наверное, зачоченел». 5. Я должна еще перемыть все стаканы. 6. Джон, повернувшись от двери, заметил, что стоит на письме, которое лежало на полочке. Его, должно быть, доставили спустя некоторое время после его возвращения. 7. «Мы будем рано пить чай, – сказала Кэт. – Ты, наверное, умираешь от голода». 8. «А, это ты!» – сказал он, взглянув с удивлением. Он, должно быть, забыл, как меня зовут. 9. Я не видел Джима, но я знал, что он, вероятно, ждет меня где-то здесь. 10. Я подождал с полчаса, и когда я уже думал, что что-то, должно быть, случилось с Китти, она приехала на такси. 11. Она такая бледная. Очевидно, она была больна. 12. Я должен написать им сегодня же. 13. Я должен для него что-нибудь сделать, – подумал Джек. 14. Филипп, в твоей книжке было какое-то письмо. – Разве? – Ты, наверное, забыл его. 15. Я, по-видимому, простоял там некоторое время в глубокой задумчивости, когда увидел, как в тусклом свете передо мной появилась какая-то темная фигура.

Exercise 62. *Remembering that 'must' in the meaning of probability is not used either with reference to the future or in the negative form, find a suitable way of translating the following sentences into English.*

1. Я не хочу сдавать экзамены. Так или иначе, меня, вероятно, не будет в Лондоне в это время. 2. Очевидно, в его распоряжении никогда раньше не было так много денег. 3. Мартин находился по другую сторону камина. Я подумал, что он, должно быть, не слышал их слов. 4. Он, должно быть, не сумел уговорить его поехать с нами. 5. У него, очевидно, пока просто не нашлось времени для вас. 6. Они, должно быть, не встретили его на станции. 7. Я терпел это так долго, потому что думал, что она меня по-своему любит. Но, конечно, она, должно быть, никогда не любила меня. 8. Преподаватель, видимо, по

ошибке не упомянул твоей фамилии. 9. Она, должно быть, не знает, что вы здесь. 10. Мы, вероятно, не видели ее с лета. 11. Могу я поговорить с тобой завтра утром? – Я, наверное, буду занят утром. 12. Он, вероятно, не захочет говорить по-английски. 13. Дома, должно быть, нет никого сейчас. 14. Кто этот старик? – Новый президент компании. – Не шути со мной. – Я не шучу. Ты, должно быть, не читал газет.

Exercise 63. *Paraphrase the following sentences using ‘can’, ‘may’ or ‘must’ in them.*

1. I don't think he did it all by himself. 2. Perhaps you're right. 3. It is possible that they forgot it in the car. 4. Is it really true? 5. I don't believe he has been meaning to do it. 6. It is impossible that he should have refused your request. 7. Evidently he has not read the book. 8. I wonder where it is that you met him. 9. I'm certain that he has heard the gong. 10. It was some special occasion, I'm sure. 11. He looks wet and muddy. I'm sure he has been fishing. 12. No doubt, she is out shopping. 13. I wonder what it is that you have brought in that box. 14. It's possible that he doesn't know we are here. 15. Is it possible that he is giving a course on the Renaissance at the University? 16. It is possible that the news is being broadcast on all the channels. 17. I'm certain they didn't take notes of the meeting. 18. Is it possible that we are out of wrapping paper? 19. It is possible he will again forget to rule a margin down the left side. 20. "I don't now see him driving his car. Is it possible that something has happened?" "Evidently his car is undergoing repairs." 21. It is just impossible for you to get this thing done so soon. 22. I wonder what it is that he is doing in there. 23. Then the firing began again. This time it was impossible for it to be more than a mile away. 24. Let's give her a call again. It is possible that she was asleep and didn't hear the telephone. 25. You have used up all the money I gave you, I suppose.

Exercise 64. *Translate the following sentences into English using ‘can’, ‘may’ or ‘must’ wherever possible.*

1. Они должны делать, как им сказано. 2. Я полагаю, что я должна надеть другие туфли на вечер. 3. Я не могу уйти, не расплатившись. 4. Они должны вернуть все деньги. 5. Ты мог бы им позвонить и сказать, что не придешь. 6. Я так хотел есть, что чуть не съел все сразу. 7. Мне взять зонт? – Да, похоже, что будет дождь. 8. Ты смог закончить работу? 9. Ситуация так плоха, что дальше некуда. 10. Ты не мог бы прийти немного попозже? 11. Неужели ты сам это написал? 12. Это просто не может случиться со мной. 13. Я перебрал в уме все возможные случаи, когда бы это я мог с ним познакомиться. 14. Может быть, он не захотел выступить. 15. Она никогда не рассказывала о своем детстве, и этому, должно быть, была какая-то причина. 16. Но я просто не могу идти дальше. 17. «Он может отдохнуть в моем кабинете», – сказал м-р Болт. 18. Нора отвела сына в свою комнату. Мне было слышно, как они там разговаривали. 19. «Не нужно преуменьшать опасность», – сказал он. 20. Я смогу написать им завтра. 21. Никто не смог бы сделать больше, чем сделал ты. 22. Ник был таким

сыном, которым любой родитель мог бы гордиться. 23. Я думаю, что он влюбился в вас потому, что никогда, должно быть, еще не встречал никого похожего на вас. 24. Я думаю, что не буду никуда выходить сегодня. Я, пожалуй, лучше посижу в комфорте у камина в такую погоду. 25. Право же, ты что-нибудь мог бы сделать относительно этого. 26. В конце концов, нельзя не восхищаться человеком с такими высокими принципами. 27. Ты можешь делать, что хочешь. 28. «Я не вижу, что еще я мог бы тогда сделать», – сказал он. 29. Его мать опять в больнице. Она, должно быть, серьезно больна. 30. Среди них не было никого, к кому бы я мог обратиться за помощью. 31. Я не понимаю, как ты мог держать себя так глупо. 32. Я поневоле подумал, что мисс Грей выдала себя этими словами. 33. Он двигался так тихо, что не мог бы побеспокоить сон самого чуткого человека. 34. Где мои очки? Нет, их здесь нет. Я, должно быть, оставил их дома. 35. Я должен оставаться здесь весь день? 36. Он спросил, может ли он положиться на меня. 37. Он спросил, не могу ли я позаниматься с его классом на следующем уроке. 38. Когда ребенок так болен, вы, должно быть, чувствуете себя ужасно. 39. Вы должны найти его и привезти сюда со всеми его материалами. 40. «Это, наверное, совсем не похоже на ваш дом», – сказал Барт. 41. Я сказал, что он может взять мой автомобиль. 42. Мне совершенно безразлично. 43. Она знала, что он, должно быть, чувствует. 44. Он не может быть старше вас более, чем на три или четыре года. 45. Погода еще может измениться к лучшему. 46. Не может быть, чтобы она этого не знает. 47. В понедельник я еще не смогу дать вам определенный ответ. 48. Возможно, они еще не приехали. 49. Возможно, они еще ведут следствие по этому делу. 50. Возможно, они были на вечере, но я их не видел. 51. И кто это мог зажечь свет в моей комнате? 52. Отец очень сердит. Что это ты опять натворил? 53. Уже совсем темно. Я, должно быть, очень долго спал. 54. Он, вероятно, скоро позвонит нам. 55. Неужели он велел прийти вам сюда? 56. Где мой ключ? – Ты, наверное, его потерял. – Не может быть, чтобы я его потерял. Я, возможно, оставил его в кармане пальто.

Exercise 65. Complete the answers to the following questions. Use **must**, **can't** or **might** with any other words you need.

1. Tony: Can that be James phoning at this hour? It's gone midnight!

You: It ... **might be him** He said he'd phone if he passed his exam.

2. Sally: Who's that going into the shop?

You: It ... **must be the cleaners**. ... They always do the floors before we open.

3. Bill: Is that your sister's fur coat?

You: It She never wears real fur.

4. Clive: I can't remember where I put my briefcase.

You: It You often leave it there.

5. Dina: Where did Adam get that new guitar? He hasn't got any money.

You: It After all, it was his birthday last week.

6. Eddy: Why did Moira ignore me at the party last night?

You: She She wasn't wearing her glasses.

7. Fred: Do you think Cindy told the boss I left work early yesterday?
You: She She left early yesterday too.
8. Heidi: Who was that man leaving the library? It looked like Peter.
You: It They are so alike that people sometimes mistake them for one another.
 Heidi: Are you sure? I really thought it was Peter.
You: It He's in hospital.

Exercise 66. Match the two halves of these sentences.

- | | |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| 1. You can't have lived in Tunisia for ten years | a. after all your hard work. |
| 2. You must know Tokyo is expensive | b. after touring the world for years. |
| 3. You must have met some fascinating people | c. if you've lived there. |
| 4. You can't be tired | d. without learning some Arabic. |
| 5. You must be exhausted | e. when you've just had a holiday. |
| 6. You may find it difficult to settle down | f. during your trip to Africa. |

Exercise 67. Write a sentence for each of these situations using **must** / **can't** / **may** / **might** (have).

- Yesterday was payday. I don't believe you're short of money already.
 ...**You can't have spent all your pay already.** ...
- It was Linda's suggestion to go for a meal. Surely she doesn't think I'm going to pay for it all? She ... **can't think I'm going to pay for it all.** ...
- George has been engaged to Kay for three months. Today he received a box with the engagement ring in it and all his letters to her. Kay
- When Tina got back home, she couldn't find her purse. Perhaps a pickpocket stole it. A pickpocket
- Isobel said she was short of money, but she's just moved into a new flat! Her uncle owns property in this area. She
- This parcel is making a ticking noise - throw it out of the window! I'm sure it's a bomb. It!
- I don't know who would send me an alarm clock for a present. My brother sometimes plays practical jokes on people, so perhaps it's from him. It
- Anna's always such a punctual person. The meeting started half an hour ago but she's not here. I know the traffic's very bad this morning. She

Exercise 68. Study these examples

- I'm sure she comes from Italy. – She **must come** from Italy.
- Perhaps he will cook dinner. – He **may/might cook** dinner.
- It's possible that she's having a party tonight. – She **could be having** a party tonight.
- Perhaps she'll be having a party tomorrow. – She **may/might be having** a party tomorrow.

5. I'm sure he didn't receive the message. – He **can't/couldn't have received** the message.
6. Perhaps they have won first prize. – They **may/might have won** first prize.
7. It's possible that she visited a friend. – She **may/might/could have visited** a friend.
8. I'm sure he is studying. – He **must be studying**.
9. I'm certain/I'm sure she was studying. – She **must have been studying**.
10. Perhaps she has been shopping. – She **may/might have been shopping**.
11. It's likely that they have been watching TV. – They **could have been watching** TV.

Exercise 69. *Rephrase the following in as many ways as possible.*

1. She might have misunderstood you.
2. I'm sure they are tired.
3. You can't park here.
4. I don't think she's sold her house.
5. It's likely that he'll object.
6. We may have to wait for them.
7. I'm sure she isn't Australian.
8. I'm sure he is terrified.
9. They'll probably want something to eat.
10. It is likely that she has got lost.
11. Might he have forgotten all about it?

Exercise 70. *Complete the sentences using the words in bold. Use two to five words.*

- 1 I'm sure she has given up smoking.
have She **must have given up** smoking.
- 2 I'm sure she isn't feeling sick now.
be She now.
- 3 Perhaps they were working for the enemy.
have They for the enemy.
- 4 Perhaps he will be on time.
be He time.
- 5 Perhaps he was too ill to take part in the race.
been He to take part in the race.
- 6 I'm sure they informed the police about the robbery.
have They about the robbery.
- 7 Perhaps Harry will be sunbathing this time tomorrow.
be Harry tomorrow.
- 8 I'm sure he warned the soldiers about the coming danger.
have He about the coming danger.
- 9 I'm sure Jenny hasn't been working there that long.
have Jenny there that long.
- 10 Perhaps she was telling you the truth.

- been** She the truth.
11 Perhaps she's been working hard.
been She hard.
12 Perhaps she'll come with us.
may She us.
13 I'm sure she hasn't prepared her speech.
have She her speech.
14 Perhaps he was asleep when we rang.
been He when we rang.
15 Perhaps he'll be waiting when we get there.
may He when we get there.
16 I'm sure she didn't know about it.
known She about it.
17 I'm certain it has stopped raining now.
have It raining now.
18 It's possible that Jane has left already.
have Jane already.
19 I have no doubt that he was lying to you.
been He to you.

4. Should 5. Ought to

Should and Ought to are very much alike in meaning and are often interchangeable. They are very common in *Spoken English*. They have only *one form*; **ought** is always followed by the **to-infinitive**.

Historically **should** was the past form of **shall** and both the forms expressed obligation. But in present-day English they have developed different meanings and are treated as two different verbs.

Should and Ought to express:

1. Obligation, moral or mild/weak obligation *or* duty, responsibility (in this meaning **ought to** is preferable).

- **should and ought to** are less emphatic (настойчивый, настоятельный, эмоциональный) than **must** and **have to**
- **must** indicates complete obligation, it is stronger than **should**
- with **should** the person has some choice on whether or not to act, but with **must** he has no choice
- In Russian **should and ought to** correspond to: (не) следует, (не) следовало (бы), (не) должен, (не) должен (был) (бы), (не) надо (было) (бы), вы бы (не)
- **all forms of the Infinitive are used:**

• Should/Ought to +	Indefinite Infinitive	<i>The action refers to the present or future /present or future reference.</i>
• Should/Ought to +	Indefinite or Continuous Infinitive	<i>The action refers to the present/ present reference.</i>
• Should/Ought to +	Perfect Infinitive	<i>The action refers to the past/ past reference.</i>

·	should do/ought to do	·	shouldn't do/oughtn't to do
·	should be doing/ought to be doing	·	shouldn't be doing/oughtn't to be doing
·	should have done/ought to have done	·	shouldn't have done/oughtn't to have done

- You **should apologise**. (= it would be a good thing to do) – Вам следует извиниться.
- **Cf.** You **must apologise**. (= you have no alternative)
- People **ought to live** in peace. (It's the right thing to do, but people don't always do it.)
- People **should be warned/ought to be warned** of the danger of swimming off this beach.
- She **ought to have treated** us more fairly. (объективно, справедливо) (It was the right thing to do, but she didn't do it.)

- I **should have given** them the money yesterday. (You mean that you had a mild obligation to give them the money yesterday, but you did not give it to him.)

2. Advice, desirability (желательность), **recommendation**. (in this meaning **should** is more common) We are talking about what is a good thing to do or the right thing to do.

- In Russian **should and ought to** correspond to: (не) следует, (не) следовало (бы), (не) должен, (не) должен (был) (бы), (не) надо (было) (бы), вы бы (не)
- **should and ought to** are used with **all forms of the Infinitive** in affirmative, negative, interrogative sentences

- **Should/Ought to + Perfect Infinitive** in *an affirmative sentence* shows that *a desirable action* was **not** carried out *or* that we expected something to happen but do not know if it happened.
- **Should/Ought to + Perfect Infinitive** in *a negative sentence* shows that *an undesirable action* was carried out.

- You **should stop** smoking. (general advice; I advise you)
- You **should have stopped** smoking. (but you **didn't**)
- It is late. **You should go** to bed.
- You **shouldn't miss** the opportunity.
- You **shouldn't sit** so close to the television! It's bad for your eyes.
- **Should I talk** to him about it?
- You **shouldn't be sitting** in the sun.
- He **should be wearing** a helmet.
- Those boys **shouldn't be playing** football at this time. They **should be** at school.
- You **should have said** it.
- He looks very ill. He **should have stayed** at home.
- They **should have arrived** by now. (But I don't know if they arrived)
- She **shouldn't have been listening** to our conversation. It was private.

- You **ought to be** more careful with your money.
- You **oughtn't to mention** it to anyone.
- **Ought she to warn** you?
- It was a great party last night. You **ought to have come**. (= you didn't come but it would have been good to come)
- You **ought to have contacted** a lawyer earlier. (but you **didn't**)

- You can use ***I should... / I shouldn't ...*** to give somebody advice. (When we give advice with I, we use **should (or would)**, not ~~ought to~~.)

- **I should leave** early tomorrow if I were you. *or* **I would leave** early tomorrow if I were you. *or* **I'd leave** early tomorrow if I were you.
- Shall I leave now? – No, I **should wait** a bit longer. (= I would wait if I were you, I advise you to wait.)

- . It's very cold this morning. I **should wear** a coat when you go out.
- We use 'should', 'ought to' to **give or ask for an opinion** about a situation, often with: **I think ...; I don't think ...; Do you think...**
 - . **I think** that we **should be paid** more.
 - . **I don't think** you **should work** so hard.
 - . You are always asking me for money. **I think** you **should spend** less.
 - . **Do you think** I **should apply** for this job? – Yes, **I think** you **should**.
 - . **Do you think** he **ought not to go**?
 - . **What do you think** we **should do**?
- 'I should' + 'think' makes **an opinion** less direct
 - . **I should think** that model would sell quite well. (*present reference*)
 - . **I should have thought** you knew. (*past reference*)
- We use 'should' as a **polite expression of thanks** on receiving a gift or a favour
 - . I've done the washing up for you. – Oh, you really **shouldn't have!** (The intonation should be friendly, as this is not a criticism.)

3. Criticism; regret (should *and* ought to are used to criticise someone's actions or lack of action)

- . They **should warn** us. (*present or future reference*)
- . You **ought to be** more polite to her. (*present or future reference*)
- . You **should have thanked** me for everything I've done for you. (= It would have been better if you had thanked me. It was the right thing to do, but you didn't do it.) (*past reference*)
- . He **should have asked** me before he took my bike. (I'm annoyed)
- . You **ought to have asked** for advice. (*past reference*) (but you didn't)
- . You **oughtn't to have stopped** on the motorway (автострада).
- . We **should have taken/ought to have taken** a taxi when it rained. (I'm sorry we didn't)

4. Expectation (= something which can be naturally expected)

- **should/ought to** = is expected to
- **should and ought to** are used in affirmative and negative sentences
- the action refers to the present or future
- in Russian **should and ought to** correspond to: **должен, не должен**
 - . The book **should be** very interesting. (= the book is expected to be interesting) Книга **должна быть** интересной.
 - . Apples **ought to grow** well here. Яблоки **должны расти** хорошо здесь.

- The new sanatorium **ought to be** very comfortable.
- She **should make** a good teacher.
- She's been studying hard for the exam, so she **should pass**. (= I expect her to pass)
- There are plenty of hotel in the town. It **shouldn't be difficult** to find somewhere to stay. (= I don't expect that it will be difficult)
- I enjoyed her first novel, so the new one **should be/ought to be** good.
- The builders **should have finished/ought to have finished** by the end of the week.
- If the flight was in time, he **should have arrived** in Jakarta early this morning.

5. Probability (вероятность). (90 % certain) (With probability **must** is more common).

- the action refers to the **present and future**
- In Russian **should and ought to** correspond to: **должен, вероятно, по-видимому, вряд ли**
 - We **should see** him there. (= We will probably see him there.)
 - We needn't be in a hurry. The guests **shouldn't come** for another hour. Гости, **вряд ли, придут** раньше чем через час.
 - I **shouldn't finish** work early today. (= I won't probably finish work early.)
 - Sally **ought to be** in Canada by now. (= She will probably be in Canada.)
 - He **should be** here by nine o'clock. (= He will probably be here by nine o'clock.)
 - The sweater **should look** nice with your tweed jacket.
 - They **should have started** the course by now. (= They have probably started the course by now.)
 - He **should have received** the report by now. (He has probably received the report.)
 - She **ought to be** a clever child. Она, **по-видимому**, умный ребенок.

6. We use **should** to make an informal suggestion

- What **should** we **have** for dinner?
- What **should** we **do** tonight?
- Why **shouldn't** we **go** to the beach?

7. **Should** is used in set expressions corresponding to the Russian: *чего ради ...; с какой стати ...; зачем ...*

- **Why should (not) they do it?**
- **Why should (not) he have done it?**
- **How should I know?** Почему я знаю?
- Why **should** she **interfere**?
- Why **should** he **have said** so?
- Why **should** he **think** so? Почему он так думает?
- Why **should** we **have argued**?
- Why **shouldn't** he **know**?
- Why **should** I **trust** you?

- Why **should** he **have bought** the book? Зачем ему было покупать эту книгу?

8. Should is used in the *if-clause* to make it even less likely

- If you **should require** any further information, please do not hesitate to contact us.
- **Should you wish** to contact me, I can be reached at the above address. (inversion)

9. There are two set phrases with ‘ought to’ expressing reproach/criticism.

1. **You ought to know this.** (= you are supposed to know this – вам полагается это знать)
2. **You ought to know better.** Мог бы понимать такие вещи.

- **You ought to know better** than to go out without an overcoat on such a cold day.

10. ought to + Infinitive – is used when describing something exciting, funny or beautiful in the meaning of: *I wish you would*.

- You **ought to hear** the way he plays the piano! = **I wish you would hear** the way he plays the piano!

11. We can use ‘be supposed to + infinitive’ instead of ‘should/ought to’ to talk about an obligation to do something. It is commonly used in spoken English to express a less strong obligation which is frequently ignored:

- I’m **supposed to** be there at 10.00. Я должен быть там в 10 часов.
- We **are supposed to** leave our textbooks at school, but we often take them home.
- The work **was supposed to** start last week. (= but it didn’t start)
- ‘**You are not supposed to**’ expresses prohibition
 - **You are not supposed to eat** in the classroom.
- We use ‘**be supposed to**’ when we report what many people think is true.
 - Eating sweets **is supposed to be** bad for your teeth. (*not: ...should be bad for...*)
- ‘**supposed**’ – ‘**said to**’
 - I’d like to read that book. **It is supposed to be very good.**
 - **He is supposed to have been married** before. (= He is said to have been married before.)
- ‘**be supposed to**’ expresses the idea that someone else expects something to be done (you are supposed to = you are expected to):
 - You **are supposed to wear** a suit to work. (= Your employer expects you to.)
 - **Cf.:** You **should wear** a suit to work. (= It is a good idea because it makes a better

impression.)

- We **are supposed to start** work at 8.00 every morning.

12. 'Should' is used for emotional coloring (see: Emotional 'Should')

Exercises

Exercise 71. Comment on the meaning of the verbs **should/ought to**. Translate the sentences into Russian:

1. I think the government should do more to help homeless people. 2. You ought to say a word or two about yourself. 3. You shouldn't have come so soon. 4. I shouldn't stay up too late. You'll be tired tomorrow. 5. I don't think we ought to grumble. 6. You shouldn't have paid the plumber in advance. 7. She should be very glad to see you. 8. The nights should be cold up there in the mountains. 9. Why should I stay here? 10. Potatoes should grow well here. 11. You should have gone to the concert. Why should you have missed the music? 12. When is he going back? – How should I know? 13. Oughtn't you to be more careful? 14. Do you think I should see the doctor? 15. Do you think I should buy the red or the blue dress? 16. My friends don't think I should go to Britain next year. 17. I think we ought to go now. 18. You should have told me that you can't swim. You might have drowned.

Exercise 72. Match these situations with **the advice** you might give in each one.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. It's raining | a. You should take a rest. |
| 2. It's too far to walk. | b. You should ask a policeman. |
| 3. Someone doesn't know which way to go. | c. You should take an umbrella. |
| 4. Someone is going to live overseas. | d. You should wear an overcoat. |
| 5. Someone has to get up early in the morning. | e. You should see a doctor. |
| 6. Someone hasn't got any money with them. | f. You should learn the language before you go. |
| 7. It's going to be a cold day. | g. You should pay by cheque. |
| 8. Someone is tired out. | h. You should take a taxi. |
| 9. Someone has seen someone breaking into a shop window. | i. You should set your alarm clock. |
| 10. Someone is feeling hot and has a headache. | j. You should call the police. |

Key 1. c

Exercise 73. Complete the following sentences using **you ought to** or **you ought not to**.

1. ... **You ought to** drive carefully on a busy road.
2. ... **You ought not to** ...eat between meals if you want to lose weight.

3. pay your bills regularly.
4. be selfish.
5. smoke too heavily.
6. go to the dentist's regularly.
7. lie in bed late everyday.
8. clean your teeth at least twice a day.
9. eat a lot of sugar.
10. be more careful.

Exercise 74. Give your friend advice or your opinion using **I think you should...** or **I don't think you should ...**

Example: I've got an exam tomorrow morning. What should I do? → ***I think you should have a good sleep before your exam.***

1. I saw someone driving dangerously in town. What should I do? →
2. I found a small sum of money on the ground yesterday. What should I do? →
3. I've been invited to the party by a group of people I don't really know. But my favourite film is on TV. What should I do? →
4. The person next to me in the exam was cheating. What should I do? →
5. I need a holiday. I have enough money for either a weekend in New York, or a week in Scotland. I can't decide. Where should I go? →

Exercise 75. Rewrite these sentences using **should have** or **shouldn't have**.

1. Why didn't you phone to say you'd be late?/...***You should have phoned to say you'd be late. ...***
 2. I wish they hadn't made such a mess./... ***They shouldn't have made such a me..***
 3. I wish I had got home earlier./.....
 4. We didn't read the instructions carefully./.....
 5. Why did you spend so much money?/
 6. I wish you had told me you were coming./.....
 7. It was very bad of them to make such a noise./.....
 8. John left the restaurant without paying his bill./.....
 9. I wish Jack had explained what he was doing./.....
 10. Why didn't you send Mary a birthday card?/.....
- Now rewrite the first five sentences using **ought to have** or **ought not to have**.....

Exercise 76. Use **should be** or **ought to be** with one of these phrases to comment on each of the sentences below.

a comfortable trip
really interesting

an exciting game
very profitable

a nice day ***fun***
nice and quiet

1. We are going to Japan for a holiday this summer. / It ...***should be really interesting.***
....
2. Bill's asked me to his birthday party. /That ***ought to be fun.***
3. There's a good match on this weekend. /Yes, it
4. We couldn't get standard tickets so we're travelling first class. /Well, at least it
5. The weather forecast for tomorrow is excellent./Yes, it
6. Jan has just opened a new shop in the High Street. /I know. It
7. Our hotel is right out in the country. /That's good. It

Exercise 77. Read the situations and write what you would say using **should, ought to, could, might** and the correct tense of the Infinitive, as in the example.

1. Your best friend failed a very important exam because she didn't study. What do you say to her? You ... ***should /ought to/might/could have studied for the exam....***
2. Adam borrowed your favourite CD without asking you. You want him to ask you next time. What do you say to him?
3. One of your classmates misses the school bus every morning because he gets up late. What do you say to him?.....
4. Your younger sister took your scarf and didn't put it back in the right place. You want her to replace it next time. What do you say to her?.....
5. You arranged to meet your friend at 6 o'clock. He came at 7 o'clock but he didn't call you to tell you he'd be late. What do you say to him?.....
6. Fred lost his keys in town yesterday. He didn't report it to the police. What do you say to him?.....

Exercise 78. Translate the following sentences into English using 'ought to' and 'should' wherever possible.

1. Я прошу извинения. Мне не следовало этого говорить. 2. Мне думается, вам надо бы проявить хоть какое-то уважение к старшим. 3. Я подумал, что тебе нужно бы знать об этом. 4. Теперь я расстроил ее. Мне не нужно было этого говорить. 5. «Я сказал что-нибудь такое, чего мне не следовало говорить?» – спросил он у матери. 6. Не стоит задавать таких вопросов. 7. Ну, что же, вы были правы. Мне не так надо было делать это. 8. Как ты думаешь, чем мне следовало бы заняться? 9. Я был с тобой более откровенен, чем мне следовало бы. 10. Я сказал, что ей совсем не следовало бы приходить с ним. 11. Не стоит быть столь критичным в твоём возрасте, Фрэнк. 12. Энн – моя сестра. – Мне следовало бы догадаться. Вы похожи на нее. 13. Ей надо было бы раньше об этом вспомнить. 14. Мне хочется сделать то, чего не следует делать.

Exercise 79. Read the situations and write sentences with **I think /I don't think... should...**

1. Peter and Judy are planning to get married. You think it's a bad idea.
(get married) I ... **don't think they should get married**
2. You don't like smoking, especially in restaurants.
(be banned) I think
3. I have a very bad cold but I plan to go out this evening. You don't think this is a good idea. You say to me: (go out)
4. You are fed up with the government. You think they have made too many mistakes. (resign).....

Exercise 80. Complete the sentences with **should (have) + the verb in brackets**.

1. Margaret **should pass** the exam. She's been studying very hard. (pass)
2. You missed a great party last night. You **should have come**..... (come)
3. We don't see you enough. You and see us more often. (come)
4. I'm in a difficult position. What do you think I? (do)
5. I'm sorry that I didn't take your advice. I what you said. (do)
6. I'm playing tennis with Jill tomorrow. She - she's much better than me. (win)
7. We lost the match but we We were the better team. (win)
8. 'Is John here yet?' 'Not yet, but he here soon.' (be)
9. I posted the letter three days ago, so it by now. (arrive)

Exercise 81. Read the situations and write sentences with **should/shouldn't**. Some of the sentences are past and some are present.

1. I'm feeling sick. I ate too much. **I shouldn't have eaten so much.**
2. That man on the motorbike isn't wearing a helmet. That's dangerous.
He **should be wearing a helmet.**
3. When we got to the restaurant, there were no free tables. We hadn't reserved one.
We
4. The notice says that the shop is open every day from 8.30. It is 9 o'clock now but the shop isn't open yet
5. The speed limit is 30 miles an hour, but Catherine is doing 50.
She
6. I went to Paris. A friend of mine lives in Paris but I didn't go to see him while I was there. When I saw him later, he said: You
7. I was driving behind another car. Suddenly, the driver in front stopped without warning and I drove into the back of his car. It wasn't my fault.
8. I walked into a wall. I wasn't looking where I was going.

Exercise 82. In which sentences can you put **should** or **must** and in which can you only put **must**? Where both are possible, consider the difference between **should** and **must**.

1. A timetable be set for withdrawing the army.

2. Les isn't home yet. He have been held up at work.
3. 'I wonder how old Mike is?' 'Well, he went to school with my mother, so he be well over 50.'
4. If you smell gas, you phone the emergency number.
5. You try to visit Nepal – it's a beautiful country.
6. 'I only live a couple of minutes from the town centre.' 'It be handy having shops nearby.'

Exercise 83. *Here are some things that people often say in Britain.*

1. Walking under a ladder **is supposed to be** unlucky.
2. It's **supposed to be** lucky if a black cat walks in front of you.
3. The call of the cuckoo (= a bird) **is supposed to be** the first sign of spring.
4. Drinking hot milk before you go to bed **is supposed to help** you sleep.

*What other similar things do people often say in your country? Use **supposed to** in your answers.*

Exercise 84. *Translate the following sentences into English using the emotional 'should'.*

1. Вот я и подумал, что ведь это абсурд, что мы живем рядом и не разговариваем.
2. Как странно, что он ничего не сказал об этом.
3. Было невероятно, чтобы Джон оказался так занят, что у него всю неделю не было времени повидать ее.
4. Не было никакой причины, почему бы им не быть там.
5. Как его зовут? – А зачем я буду тебе говорить?
6. Мне жаль, что ты так плохо обо мне думаешь.
7. Не знаю, почему это он хочет увидеть Джорджа.
8. Было странно, что в ее возрасте она была так безразлична к вечеринкам.
9. Все же Розмари не понимала, почему она должна уйти.
10. Ведь нет возражений, чтобы я его повидал? – А почему бы им быть?
11. Мне очень жаль, что мой брат ответственен за это.
12. Как случилось, что ты привел его с собой? И чего это он захотел прийти сюда?
13. Он был очень доволен, что Кэт все же назвала ребенка в его честь.
14. Что могло с ним случиться? Представить себе не могу, почему он так опаздывает.
15. Забавно, что ее инстинкт оказался прав.
16. Ему, казалось, было лестно, что кто-то захотел почитать что-нибудь, написанное им.
17. Меня рассердило, что он оказался таким слабовольным.
18. Она начала рассказывать мужу о Теде, но вскоре остановилась и сказала: «Я просто не знаю, почему я надоедаю тебе этими рассказами о Теде».

Exercise 85. Use of English. Key Word Transformation. *Study these examples. The second sentence has a similar meaning to the first sentence.*

1. Perhaps Laura is at the office.
be Laura **may/might/could be** at the office.
2. I'm sure they are looking for another flat.
be They **must be looking for** another flat.

3. People who work here are obliged to wear uniforms.
to People who work here **have to wear** uniforms.
4. I'm sure Peter didn't steal the money.
have Peter **can't have stolen** the money.
5. Why didn't you tell me about the accident?
have You **might/could/should/ought to have told** me about the accident.
6. I don't think the report has been typed yet.
been The report **can't/couldn't have been typed** yet.
7. Perhaps he forgot your birthday.
have He **may/might/could have forgotten** your birthday.
8. It is forbidden to park here.
not You **must not/cannot park** here.

○ *Complete each sentence with **two to five** words, including the word in bold.*

1. I'm sure Kevin didn't do anything wrong.
have Kevin anything wrong.
2. Perhaps they left the documents at home.
have They the documents at home.
3. It wasn't necessary for her to call me today, but she did.
have She today.
4. Perhaps Lucy is at the shops.
be Lucy at the shops.
5. I don't think the money has been counted yet.
been The money yet.
6. It is forbidden to take these books home with you.
not You these books home with you.
7. I'm sure he is preparing his presentation.
be He his presentation.
8. It wasn't necessary for Chris to reserve a table in advance.
need Chris a table in advance.
9. Why didn't you tell him about the problem?
have You him about the problem.
10. People who want to join the club are obliged to pay £20.
to People who want to join the club £20.
11. Perhaps Sheila is on holiday.
may Sheila holiday.
12. Why didn't you clean up the mess?
ought You the mess.

6. To have to

To have to is a modal verb, a modal expression. As a modal verb **to have to** is not a defective verb. It can have the category of person and number and all tense-aspect forms as well as verbals (неличные формы глагола: the Gerund, the Infinitive and the Participle). It is followed by a **to-Infinitive**. In the negative and interrogative sentences the auxiliary verb **to do** is used with **to have to**.

To have to expresses:

1. Obligation or necessity arising out of circumstances

- We use **to have to** + only **the Indefinite Infinitive Active and Passive** in affirmative, negative and interrogative sentences
- Its meaning is close to that of '**to be obliged to**' (быть обязанным)
- **To have to** corresponds to the Russian: **приходится, вынужден, должен**
 - . He has fallen ill, so I **have to change** my plans.
 - . She **had to put off** her visit to the doctor.
 - . You **will have to come** again.
 - . Something **has to be done**.
 - . The form **has to be signed** in the presence of a witness.
 - . I **have had to remind** him several times to return my book.
 - . I **didn't have to walk**. I took a taxi.
 - . **Do you have to work** so hard?
 - . Why **does he have to go** there?
 - . When I was your age, I **had to walk** to school!
 - . I **had to cut** down on fats or else I would have got overweight.

Note:

- ◆ '**to have to**' is close in its meaning to '**must**' when we express **present obligation or necessity**. We use '**must**' or '**have to**' when we want to say that *somebody has an obligation to do something* or that *it is necessary for them to do it. (present reference)*
 - . She is short of time so she **has to go** by air. = She is short of time so she **must go** by air.
 - . Sorry, I **must leave** now. = Sorry, I have to leave now. (No difference)
 - . You **must come** to the meeting tomorrow.
 - . She **has to travel** to find work.
- ◆ '**had to**' replaces '**must**' to express **past obligation or necessity**. In the past '**had to**' shows a *fulfilled obligation. (past reference)*
 - . She **had to do** a lot of things when we were in the country (должна была делать; приходилось) (= **was obliged to do and did it**)

. They made such a noise that I **had to send** him to make inquiries. (...мне пришлось отправить его узнать/выяснить; **it was necessary and I did it**)

- ◆ ‘**will have to**’ replaces ‘**must**’ to express **future obligation or necessity**.
 - . You **will have to take** a taxi if you want to catch the train. (*future reference*)
 - ◆ **There is sometimes difference between ‘must’ and ‘have to’ in the present.** In everyday statements of necessity ‘**have to**’ is used more commonly than ‘**must**’:
 - ‘**must**’ is usually stronger than ‘**have to**’ and can indicate **urgency** (настойчивость; назойливость; безотлагательность, крайняя необходимость) or **stress importance**.
 - . I’m looking for Sue. I **have to talk** to her about our lunch date tomorrow. I can’t meet her for lunch because I **have to go** to a business meeting at 1.00. (the speaker is simply saying, ‘*I need to do this and I need to do that*’)
 - . Where is Sue? I **must talk** to her right now; I have an urgent message (срочное сообщение/извещение/письмо) for her. (The speaker is strongly saying, ‘*This is very important*’)
 - . You **must start** working harder. (I say so)
 - . You **have to turn** left here. (It’s the law)
 - We normally use **must** when **the authority** (распоряжение, разрешение) **comes from the speaker**; **must** describe a personal obligation.
 - . You **must be** at home by 10. (= I insist that you should be at home by 10.)
 - . I’ve got a terrible pain in my back. I **must go and see** the doctor. (= I think it is necessary)
 - . I **must see** the head teacher. (... I want to discuss something with her)
 - We normally use **have to** when **the authority comes from outside the speaker**; **have to** describes obligation made by someone else.
 - . I **have to be** at home by 10 o’clock. (= my parents insist)
 - . I **have to go and see** the doctor at 9.00 tomorrow morning. (= I have got an appointment)
 - . I **have to see** the head teacher. (... she has called me to her office)
2. In spoken English the meaning of **obligation and necessity** is also expressed by ‘**have got to**’
- . He **has got to go** right now. (Ему придется уходить прямо сейчас)
 - . **Has he got to go** right now?
 - . He **hasn’t got to go** right now.
- We normally use ‘**had to**’, not ‘~~had got to~~’ for **the past**.
 - . We’ve **got to** move house. (informal; present reference)
 - . They **had to** move house. (past reference)
 - ‘**Have to**’ and ‘**have got to**’ are interchangeable for *single actions*.

. I **have to check** the oil level in the car. = I **have got to check** the oil level in the car. (= I've **got to check** the oil level in the car.)

- But we normally use '**have to**' (*not*: '~~have got to~~') for things that happened *repeatedly*, especially *with adverbs of frequency* (**often, always, regularly**)

. I *always* **have to do** the shopping. (*Not*: I *always* ~~have got to do~~ the shopping.)

. **Do** you ever **have to get up** at 5?

3. Absence of necessity = there is no obligation or necessity to do something.

- **don't have to** = it is not necessary to do something (*present reference*)

- **didn't have to** = it was not necessary to do something and he didn't (*past reference*)

- **don't have to/don't need to/needn't + the Indefinite Infinitive** (*present reference*)

. Many women **don't have to work**. **Do** many women **have to work**?

. You **don't have to learn** any typing skills.

. You **don't need to take** the dog for a walk, I will do it.

. You **don't have to water** the plants again.

. You **don't need to water** the plants again.

. You **needn't water** the plants again. = **It is not necessary to water** the plants again.

- **didn't have to** (the action didn't take place); **didn't need to** (past reference)

. He **didn't have to buy** this book (He knew it was unnecessary and he didn't buy it
ему не пришлось покупать книгу)

. We **didn't have to learn** a foreign language when we were students.

. She **didn't need to pay** the whole amount today. (We **don't know whether she paid it or not.**)

. **Did you have to work** late yesterday? / **Did you need to work** late yesterday?

. **Did you have to get up** so early? / **Did you need to get up** so early? (= **Was it necessary for you to get up so early?**)

Note 1: '**mustn't**' does not mean the same as '**don't have to**'

- '**You mustn't do something**' = it is necessary that you do not do it (so, don't do it); it is against the rules.

- '**mustn't**' describes something **which is not allowed**. (**mustn't** - передает значение запрещения)

. You **mustn't talk** about politics. (= **It is necessary that you do not talk** about politics.)

. You **mustn't leave** any bags here. (**It's against the rules.**)

. You **mustn't smoke** in the patients' ward. (=Don't smoke here/**prohibition**)

- ‘**You don’t have to do something**’ = it is not necessary for you to do it, but you can do it if you want.
 - ‘**don’t have to**’ describes something **which is not necessary**. (**don’t have to** - передает значение **отсутствия необходимости**)
- **You don’t have to stay** here. (= It is not necessary for you to stay here, but you can if you want.)

Note 2: **must** and **have to** have different meanings *in questions*

- **Must I wash** the car now? (= **Do you insist that** I should wash the car now?)
- **Do I have to wash** the car now? (= **Is it necessary** for me to wash the car now?)
- **Must I do** my homework now? (= **Do you insist that** I should do my homework now?)
- **Do I have to do** my homework now? (= **Is it necessary** for me to do my homework now?)

Exercises

Exercise 86. *Comment on the meaning of **to have to**. Translate the sentences into Russian:*

1. I’m afraid, I shall have to send him away. 2. Was the fire already laid or did you have to lay it? 3. The rope was so strong that he had to take a knife to cut it. 4. But was it worth while going to bed when he had to be up again at five? 5. I suppose I shall have to go back to London, shan’t I? 6. Do you have to get up early every morning? 7. He will have to pay me back before Sunday. 8. How long did you have to stay there? 9. “We shall have to wait a long time for our holidays,” she said with a sigh. 10. And you have to go there twice a week, don’t you? 11. He hates having to get up early. 12. She has had to work hard all her life. 13. I couldn’t go to the party last night because I had to baby-sit for my sister. 14. If you want to apply for this job, you have to be able to type at least 60 words a minute. 15. I have had to remind him several times to return my book. 16. The reason for our late arrival was that we had had to wait for hours while they checked the plane before take off. 17. If he had asked me, I would have had to tell him the truth.

Exercise 87. *Change the following into the negative and interrogative.*

1. Mother has to cook dinner after work. 2. He had to sit up late with this work. 3. You will have to get up very early to-morrow. 4. The girl had to take care of her younger sister and brothers. 5. She will have to do it once over again. 6. These documents have to be filed. 7. They had to cover the whole distance on foot. 8. We shall have to speak to him about it. 9. He had to wait at the station till it stopped raining. 10. The work will have to be done before nightfall. 11. She often has to go to the dentist’s.

Exercise 88. *What was life at school when you were young? Complete the sentences using **had to** or **didn't have to**.*

1. ... We had to ...	stand up when the teacher came into the room.
2. ... We didn't have to ...	wear a uniform.
3.	do a lot of homework.
4. ...	have short hair.
5. ...	study languages.
6. ...	eat at school.
7. ...	take a lot of exams.

Exercise 89. *Complete these sentences with a form of **have to** or **must** (whichever is more likely) + an appropriate verb:*

do tell wake go go take/do come

1. He's got a lung problem and he to hospital every two weeks.
2. You and visit us soon. It would be so nice to see you again.
3. That's really good news. I my friend, Steve.
4. I always sleep through the alarm clock. My Dad me every morning.
5. As I won't be at home tonight, I my homework during my lunch break.
6. 'Can we meet on Thursday morning?' 'Sorry, no. I to the dentist at 11.00.'
7. I'm feeling really unfit. I more exercise.

Exercise 90. *Underline the correct or more likely answer. If both are wrong, suggest a correct alternative.*

1. I think she **must/ has to** be very rich.
2. 'They want us to leave by tomorrow.' 'They **mustn't /haven't got to** be serious.'
3. I heard about Jane's accident. You **must / had to** have been worried about her.
4. He says he's 50, but he **mustn't / hasn't got to** be that old.
5. I looked at my watch and **must/ had to** admit that I didn't have much time.
6. To get to Peru, I **must /had to** borrow money from my sister.
7. Being so well-known, you **must /have to** receive hundreds of letters each week.

Exercise 91. *Match the sentence beginnings and ends.*

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. You mustn't drink alcohol | a. to enjoy it. |
| 2. You mustn't keep medicines | b. when you go into a pub. |
| 3. You don't have to be a member | c. if teachers object to the new curriculum. |
| 4. You don't have to play golf well | d. to run up and down the aisle of the aircraft. |
| 5. Newspapers mustn't | e. to use the tennis club. |
| 6. You don't have to drink alcohol | f. when you drive. |
| 7. Newspapers don't have to say | g. who provided their information. |
| 8. Children mustn't be allowed | h. where children can get them. |
| 9. You mustn't be surprised | i. mislead the public. |

Exercise 92. Write new sentences with a similar meaning. Use **have/has got to** where it is possible or preferable; otherwise use **have/has to**.

1. It is necessary to do all of this work before the end of the day. ... ***All of this work has got to be done before the end of the day.*** ... (*'has to be done' is also possible*)
2. Was it necessary for you to pay Bob to paint the fence?
3. It is necessary to build the road to take traffic away from the city centre.
4. It is rarely necessary to tell Mary anything twice.
5. Is it necessary for us to get up early tomorrow morning?
6. It wasn't necessary for her to take time off work when her son was ill.
7. It is sometimes necessary for Peter to clean his parents' car before they give him any pocket money.

Exercise 93. Translate the sentences into English using **to have to**.

1. У меня нет этих книг дома, и я вынужден ходить в библиотеку.
2. Мне не пришлось писать ей письмо.
3. Ей не надо спешить сейчас.
4. Нам не нужно было/не пришлось оставаться там долго.
5. Уже поздно. Мы должны покинуть библиотеку.
6. Нам не нужно будет звонить им.
7. Ему не нужно идти в столовую обедать. Он может пообедать здесь.
8. Вам придется проводить их. Они не знают дороги.
9. Вы должны приготовить эту работу к четвергу.
10. Ему пришлось приготовить эту работу к четвергу.
11. Если бы мы приготовили все заранее, нам не нужно было бы делать это сейчас.
12. Выбора не было, и ему пришлось согласиться.
13. Я собирался сделать доклад по этому вопросу, и для этого я должен был просмотреть много литературы.
14. Я должен был ходить в библиотеку почти каждый день: до экзамена оставалось всего несколько дней.
15. Я думаю, что, если бы вам довелось выполнять подобное задание, то вы бы тоже были вынуждены обращаться к кому-нибудь за помощью.
16. Мне сейчас приходится много работать, так как я болела и отстала от группы.
17. Я вынужден был извиниться, хотя мне это и было неприятно.
18. Книгу необходимо переплести (to bind), иначе некоторые страницы могут потеряться.
18. Вам приходится очень рано вставать, не так ли?

Exercise 94. Choose the most suitable word or phrase underlined.

1. There's someone at the door. It can be/must be the postman. ... ***must be*** ...
2. Don't worry, you don't have to/mustn't pay now.
3. I think you had better/would better take a pullover with you.
4. Jones could be/must be president if Smith has to resign.
5. Sorry, I can't stay any longer. I have to go/might go.
6. It was 5 o'clock an hour ago. Your watch can't be/mustn't be right.
7. It's a school rule, all the pupils have to wear/must wear a uniform.
8. I suppose that our team must win/should win, but I'm not sure.
9. Let's tell Diana. She could not know/might not know.

10. In my opinion, the government might do/should do something about this.

Exercise 95. Complete the sentences using **must, have to, may, might, could or can't**, as in the example.

1. Perhaps Tom will work late tonight. ...Tom **may/might work** late tonight.
2. It's possible that Mary is trying to call us. Mary
3. The students are obliged to finish the test in one hour. The students
4. It's possible that Mum is working in the garden. Mum
5. I'm sure Rachel is hungry. Rachel
6. Perhaps Dad will take us out to dinner. Dad
7. I'm sure Lucy hasn't reached the station yet. Lucy
8. It is necessary for Grandma to take her medication every morning. Grandma.....
9. It's likely that they have gone to the supermarket. They
10. I'm certain Bob didn't leave the party early. Bob

Exercise 96. Modals. Choose the correct item.

1. Our English lessons at school were very boring. We long exercises and learn a lot of grammar rules by heart.
A) must to write B) must write C) had to write D) can write
2. I take your dictionary?
A) May B) Ought C) Have
3. It was a very difficult text. I look up a lot of words in the dictionary.
A) must B) have to C) had to D) must to
4. He come here every day.
A) must B) have to C) ought D) should to
5. He said that he leave Moscow soon.
A) may B) must C) have to
6. The weather change tomorrow.
A) may B) can C) must
7. He to go to the dentist because he has toothache.
A) ought B) must C) should D) have
8. The children left alone.
A) mustn't B) mustn't to be C) shouldn't be D) shouldn't to be
9. you translate this agreement into French?
A) ought to B) can C) may
10. I think that I will help you.
A) can B) must C) be able to
11. It a lovely day tomorrow.
A) can be B) could be C) must be
12. I'm getting fat. I think I eating the wrong kind of food.
A) must be B) can't C) can be
13. I'm not sure, but I Sue in town last night.
A) can see B) must have seen C) may have seen

14. My letter yesterday, but it didn't.
A) must have arrived B) may have arrived C) should have arrived
15. That girl 29 years old. She looks about 12!
A) may be B) must be C) can't be
16. We're very busy tomorrow so we time to visit you. We aren't sure.
A) could not have B) might not have C) ought to have

7. To be to

To be to is a modal expression (or a modal verb). Some of its meanings are close to those of modal verbs and expressions denoting obligation: **must, to have to, should, ought to, shall**.

'to be to' is used in the **Present and Past Indefinite Tense**.

To be to expresses:

1. Obligation or necessity arising out of an arrangement (договоренность, соглашение) or plan; an agreement (договор, соглашение); part of plan.

- We use: **to be to + the Indefinite and Perfect Infinitive** in affirmative and interrogative sentences
- **to be to** corresponds to the Russian: **должен, должен был**
- '**to be to**' in the **Past indefinite + Perfect Infinitive** shows that the action had been arranged but did not happen. (**was/were to have done**)
- '**to be to**' in the **Past Indefinite + Indefinite Infinitive** does not show whether the action was or was not carried out and, on the other hand, it is the only way to show a fulfilled action. (**was/were to do**)
- We **are to complete** this work tomorrow. (somebody expects it)
- The next dance **is to be** mine. Следующий танец должен быть моим.
- The train **is to arrive** on time. Поезд должен прийти вовремя.
- When **is** the wedding **to be**? Когда должна быть свадьба?
- **Is he to arrive** the day after tomorrow?
- We **were to meet** at 5 o'clock at the station (we promised each other to be punctual)
- We **were to discuss** it last week. (and we did)
- We **were to have discussed** it last week (but we failed)
- She **was to have graduated** in June but unfortunately fell ill. (и поэтому не закончила в июне)
- Who **was to speak** at the meeting?
- I **was to have helped** with the performance, but I got flu the day before.
- I **was to send** him a letter. Я должен был послать ему письмо.
- They **were to have met** us. Они должны были встретить нас (но не встретили).
- The exam results **were to arrive** at the school today. We can ring tomorrow to find out whether they have arrived.
- The exam results **were to have arrived** at the school today but apparently the exam board has not posted them yet.
- **Note: to be to** is used to refer to the future when we talk about things that *can be controlled by people*. Thus statements such as: '**It is going to rain**' or '**I'm going to faint**' cannot be expressed with '**to be to**', which has restricted uses.
- We don't know where the meteorite **is going to land**. (*not: ...the meteorite ~~is to~~ land.*)
- I suppose we **will** all **die** eventually.

2. Strict orders, formal commands or formal instructions (инструкция, распоряжение, предписание, указание, наставление), **formal or official arrangements in the future**. The construction is common in **writing**, especially in **news articles** to talk about future events.

- We use: **to be to + the Indefinite Infinitive** in affirmative and negative sentences
- **to be to** corresponds to the Russian: **должен, не должен**
 - . You **are to stay** here until I return. (I tell you to stay here until I return.)
 - . He **is to return** to Liverpool tomorrow.
 - . The students **are to hand in** their course paper by the first of May.
 - . You **are not to leave** the school without my permission. Вы не должны покидать школу без моего разрешения.
 - . The medicine **is to be taken** after meals. Лекарство нужно принимать после еды.
 - . The European Parliament **is to introduce** a new law on safety at work.
 - . The workers **are to be transferred** to a new factory on the outskirts of town.
 - . The Prime Minister has announced that there **is to be** an election on May 1st.
 - . I was on holiday in Greece when I heard there **was to be** an election on May 1st. (the future from the past)
 - . Children **are not to be left** unsupervised in the museum.
 - . There **was to have been** a ban on smoking in restaurants, but restaurant owners have forced the council to reconsider.
 - . OPEC representatives **are to meet** in Geneva next Tuesday. (OPEC = Organization of Petroleum Exporting Countries, Организация стран-экспортеров нефти (ОСЭН, ОПЕК))

3. A strict prohibition.

- We use: **to be to + the Indefinite Infinitive** in negative sentences
 - **to be to** corresponds to the Russian: **не должен, не делай не смей**
 - **May not, can't, are not to, must not** – are arranged in increasing order of severity (строгость). '**must**' being an absolute prohibition.
- . You **are not to smoke** in the room.
- . We **are not to leave** the place until we are told.
- . Poison: **Not to be taken!** (public notice (официальное извещение/объявление (в печати))
- . Can we go separately? – **No, you may not/ No, you can't/ No, you are not/ No, you mustn't.**

4. Something thought of as unavoidable, something that was destined to happen (предназначено, предопределено случиться).

- We use: **to be to + the Indefinite Infinitive** in affirmative and negative sentences mainly in *the Past Indefinite Tense*
- **to be to** corresponds to the Russian: **суждено, предстоит**

- I didn't know at that time she **was to be** my wife. Ей суждено было стать моей женой. He **was to be** my teacher and friend for many years.
- He **was never to see** her again. Ему больше никогда не суждено было увидеть её.
- It **was not to be**. Этому не было суждено сбыться.
- Einstein was still a young man. His discoveries had not yet been published, but they **were to change** our whole view of the Universe.
- At the time she was probably the best actor in the theatre company, but in fact some of her colleagues **were to become** much better.
- He **was to find out** years later that the car he had bought was stolen.
- If **we are to be** neighbours for life, we should be on friendly terms. Если нам предстоит всю жизнь быть соседями, нам следует быть в дружеских отношениях.

5. Possibility

- We use: **to be to + the Indefinite Infinitive Passive** in affirmative, negative and interrogative sentences
- In questions beginning with the interrogative adverb **How** '**to be to**' is used with the **Indefinite Infinitive Active**
- '**to be to**' is very close to '**can**' and '**may**'

- He **was often to be seen** there. Его часто там можно было видеть.
- Where **is he to be found**. Где его можно найти?
- Nothing **was to be done**. ничего невозможно было сделать/ничего нельзя было сделать.
- They are **not to be trusted**.
- **How are you to know** it? Как ты можешь знать это?/Откуда ты можешь знать?
- **How am I to repay** you for your kindness?

5. 'To be to' equals 'to want' after the conjunction 'if'

- **If we are to be** (= **want to be**) there on time, we must start at once.
- You must take sides (стать на чью-л. сторону) **if you are to remain** human.
- The law needs to be revised (пересматривать) if justice **is to be done**. Чтобы справедливость могла восторжествовать, нужно прежде изменить законы.
- If humans **are to survive** as a species (биол. вид), we must address environmental issues now. (environmental issues – экологическая проблема, проблема состояния окружающей среды)
- Compare the use of **to be to + infinitive** and the **Present Indefinite** for the future in '**if-clauses**':
 - We often use **to be to + infinitive** in the '**if-clause**' to say that something must take place first in the **principal** clause before something else can take place in the '**if-clause**'
 - We use the **Present Indefinite** in the '**if-clause**' to say that the action must take place first in the '**if-clause**'; в реальном условии оборот **to be to** употребляется в случае, если одно событие (обозначенное в главном предложении) должно произойти раньше, чем некоторое другое событие (обозначенное в придаточном предложении).

- If British tennis **is to reach** world standard again, more money will be necessary. (= more money must be given first for British tennis to improve.)
- Jones needs to improve his technique **if he is to win** at the next Olympics. Чтобы выиграть золото на следующих Олимпийских играх, Джонсу нужно будет вначале улучшить технику. *And*
- Jones has said that he will retire from athletics **if he wins** gold at the next Olympics. (the Present Indefinite in the 'if-clause')

6. Here are some **set phrases** with the modal verb '**to be to**'

- **What am I to do?** Что мне делать? Как мне быть?
- **What is to become of me?** Что со мной будет? (станется)
- **Where am I to go?** Куда же мне идти? Куда же мне деваться?

7. An unreal condition referring to the Future can be expressed by the form '**were**' of the modal verb '**to be to**'

- If you **were to meet** me, I would be happy. Если случайно ..., если так случится, что ..., если вдруг вы бы встретили меня, я был бы счастлив.
- He had been a fool to spend so much money on Mildred; but he knew that if it **were to come** again he would act in the same way. Глупостью с его стороны было потратить на Милдред столько денег; но он знал, что если бы все это случилось еще раз, он повел бы себя так же.

Exercises

Exercise 97. *Analyse the meaning of the verb **to be to** in the following sentences and translate them into English.*

1. There was something in his manner that was not to be resisted. 2. Why are you late? You were to have come an hour ago. 3. "My dear Trot!" cried my aunt, in a terrified whisper. "I don't know what I am to do!" 4. A little disconsolate (безутешный), he watched the steamer splashing down the channel towards the pier. What sort of fellow-travellers was he to have? 5. It is evident that we are to have a backward season for grains. 6. What do you want with my things? Am I to be moved into another cell? 7. Large sums are now being spent on educational development and still larger sums are to be spent in the near future. 8. I stood at the window, looking at them disappear, and my heart kept repeating "Good-bye, good-bye!" I was not to see them for nearly five years. 9. Nobody met me when I came. I was to have arrived by the ten o'clock train, but I couldn't get a ticket for it. 10. Remember that we are to be at his place not later than eight. 11. Why are you so late? Didn't you get my letter saying that we were to have met at four? 12. He was to find out years later that the car he had bought was stolen. 13. I was to have helped with the performance, but I got flu the day before. 14. The army needs to change its image if more women are to be recruited.

Exercise 98. *Explain the difference in meaning between the two sentences in the following pairs.*

1. a) The plane was not to take off at night as the weather was too bad. b) The plane was to have taken off at night, but the weather was too bad.
2. a) There was to be an interesting concert last night, but I didn't feel well and had to stay at home. b) There was to have been an interesting concert last night, but the singer fell ill and the concert had to be postponed.
3. a) The order came that we were not to leave the village before dawn. b) We were not to have left the village before dawn, but by the time the order came we were two miles away from it.

Exercise 99. Choose the more appropriate alternative, (a) or (b), to complete these sentences. (to be to)

1. The meeting **was to have taken place** in the hall, ...
 - a. but had to be cancelled at the last moment.
 - b. and was well attended.
2. She **was to have appeared** with Elvis Presley in his last film, ...
 - a. and was a tremendous success.
 - b. but the part went to her sister.
3. Later, in Rome, I **was to meet** Professor Pearce ...
 - a. but she left before I got there.
 - b. and was very impressed by her knowledge.
4. The twenty police officers who **were to have gone** off duty at 8.00 ...
 - a. went to the Christmas party.
 - b. had to remain in the police station.
5. It **was to take** 48 hours to get to Japan ...
 - a. and we were exhausted when we arrived.
 - b. but we managed to do it in only a day.
6. After the war he **was to teach** at London University ...
 - a. but no money was available to employ him.
 - b. for 10 years.

Exercise 100. Choose a verb to complete the sentences. Use **to be to + infinitive** if possible, and **will + infinitive** if not.

appear arrive become begin feel fit move resign

1. A manin court today after a car he was driving killed two pedestrians.
2. The danger is that the bacteria.....more resistant to antibiotics over time.
3. The Environment Department has announced that it ...2,000 jobs out of the capital.
4. When the news is broken to him, heboth upset and angry.
5. Workthis week on the new Thames bridge.
6. The Business Information Group said today that Brian Murdochas its executive director.

7. We are all hoping that warmer weather soon.
8. No more than six peoplearound the table comfortably.

Exercise 101. Translate the sentences into English. (to be to)

1. Когда же он должен прийти? 2. Мы должны были встретиться в театре. 3. Ему надо переписать сочинение. 4. Когда вы должны быть в институте завтра? 4. Мне надо идти туда сейчас? 5. Он должен был стать музыкантом. Это было решено еще до его рождения. 6. Я должен был закончить работу вчера, но не смог этого сделать. 7. Чья очередь? Кто должен идти за покупками? 8. Я должен отвезти брату его вещи. Так мы договорились, когда он уходил. 9. Подожди немного, я должна дочитать главу до конца. 10. Ему суждено было стать моим другом. 11. Когда он должен приехать? Мы договорились встретиться в восемь. 12. Отец не разрешает ей приходить домой поздно, она должна быть дома к девяти часам каждый вечер. 13. Что мне делать?/Как мне быть? 14. Как ты можешь знать это?/Откуда ты можешь знать? 15. Лекарство нужно принимать после еды.

Exercise 102. Choose the most suitable word or phrase underlined.

1. We can't be lost. It isn't allowed /I don't believe it. ... ***I don't believe it....***
2. Jane is bound to be late. She always is/She must be.
3. Late-comers are to report to the main office. It's a good idea/It's the rule.
4. You don't have to stay unless it's necessary/if you don't want to.
5. Astronauts must feel afraid sometimes. They're supposed to/It's only natural.
6. You can't come in here. It isn't allowed/I don't believe it.
7. All motorcyclists have to wear crash helmets. It's a good idea/It's the rule.
8. I ought not to tell Jack. It's not a good idea/It's the rule.
9. We should be there soon. I expect so/It's absolutely certain.
10. You'd better leave now. That's my advice/That's an order.

Exercise 103. Translate into English. (must; to have to; to be to)

1. Мама была больна, и мне пришлось готовить обед. 2. Должно быть, она готовила обед, когда пришел брат. 3. Я должен был зайти (to call at) в деканат. 4. Должно быть, он заходил в деканат. 5. Мне надо видеть его сегодня же. 6. Вам придется немного подождать. 7. Было уже поздно, и нам пришлось поехать на метро. 8. Вы должны вставать рано каждый день? 9. Мне пришлось написать об этом сестре. 10. Она, должно быть, написала сестре. 11. Она, должно быть, писала сестре, когда вы ее увидели. 12. Она, должно быть, гостит у своих друзей, так как она писала, что проведет отпуск у них. 13. Они, должно быть, ждут меня, а я никак не могу дать им знать о себе. 14. Книга распродана; надо ее поискать в букинистических магазинах (second-hand bookshop). 15. Он, по всей вероятности, забыл, что обещал прийти. 16. Сказал ли преподаватель, что мы должны выучить этот текст наизусть? 17. Я не знал, что этот текст не надо

учить наизусть. 18. Вчера вечером автобус был полупустой (half empty), и мне не пришлось стоять. 19. Они должны были прийти в 5, а уже 6 часов. 20. Он наверно, забыли, что должны были прийти в 5 часов. 21. Надеюсь, вам не пришлось долго ждать, да? 22. Тебе придется взять пальто. Становится холоднее.

Exercise 104. Translate the following sentences into English. (have to; be to)

1. Барт должен был увидаться со своим шурином за ленчем на следующий день, но он не видел причины рассказывать об этом жене. 2. Ей пришлось выпить чай без сахара. 3. Я знал, что Пэт должна была прийти в клуб. 4. Я был несколько удивлен, обнаружив так много народа в зале, где я должен был выступать. 5. Мне нет необходимости быть там до трех часов. 6. Руди пригласили на обед домой к Мэри. После обеда они должны были пойти в кино. 7. Один из гостей сел около меня. Мне не нужно было говорить, кто он. 8. Они бомбили нас весь день вчера, и мы вынуждены были оставаться в окопах. 9. У тебя короткие волосы и они вьются. – Я болела скарлатиной, и волосы пришлось обрезать. 10. «Я ведь никогда не говорил тебе, что учился в частной школе?» – спросил Алек. – «В этом не было необходимости». 11. Затем Франк взял меня на долгую автомобильную прогулку. А в семь часов мы должны были обедать с Гринами. 12. По радио объявили, что вечером должен выступать президент. 13. Он должен был пододвинуться поближе, чтобы услышать ее. 14. В этот час Филиппа никогда не было видно. 15. Нам пришлось согнуть цветок, чтобы он поместился в коробке.

8. Need

The modal verb **need** may be used either as a defective (недостаточный, неполный) or a regular verb. As a defective verb **need** has only one form and combines with a bare infinitive. In reported speech it remains unchanged. As a regular, notional verb it has non-finite forms, analytical forms of the verb, is used with auxiliary verbs in negative and interrogative sentences and takes direct objects.

There is a slight difference in the usage of regular and irregular forms. The regular form is used mainly when the following infinitive denotes habitual action. The defective form is more common for one particular occasion.

Need expresses:

1. Necessity or absence of necessity

- **to need + noun / pronoun** = to be in need of, to be in want of
 - **need** is a regular, notional, normal, transitive verb ('**need**' is *not* a modal verb)
 - **need** is used in affirmative, negative and interrogative sentences
 - **need** corresponds to the Russian: **нужно, нуждается, не нужно, незачем, надо, не надо**
 - He **needs** a dictionary.
 - **Do** you **need** my help?
 - She **does not need** any interpreter.
 - I **needed** a pair of shoes. It looks like rain.
 - You **will need** a raincoat and rubber boots, I think.
- **to need + verb**
 - **need** is a **regular**, notional, normal, transitive verb ('**need**' is *not* a modal verb)
 - **need** is used in affirmative, negative and interrogative sentences
 - **need** is used with the Indefinite Infinitive only
 - **need** corresponds to the Russian: **нужно, не нужно**
 - **need** is close to '**to have to**'
 - You **don't need to tell** me about it. (= You **don't have to tell** me about it.)
 - You **didn't need to tell** me about it
 - **Did** you **need to read** all these books? (= **Did** you **have to read** all these books? = Was it necessary for you to read all these books?)
 - I'm afraid you **need to know** all about it.
 - I'm tired. I **need to get** some sleep.
 - We **need to complete** this report by Friday. (= *we* complete it) *and*
 - We **need them to complete** this report by Friday. (= *they* complete it)

- when we say that **it is necessary** to do something, we use **need, must, to have to, to have got to** (**have got to** is less formal than the others, and is particularly common in spoken English)
 - Before you buy a house, you **must consider/ need to consider/ have to consider/ have got to consider** all the costs.

- **need + verb**

- **need** is a **modal, defective, anomalous** (аномальный, неправильный) verb
- **need** has only one form
- **need** is followed by the bare Infinitive
- **need** is used most commonly **in negative sentences**, although it is sometimes also used in interrogative sentences
- **need** is used with **the Indefinite and Perfect Infinitive**

- **needn't + the Indefinite Infinitive** shows that an unnecessary action refers to **the present or future (present or future reference)** (*needn't do – выражает отсутствие необходимости совершить действие в настоящем или будущем*)

- *needn't do – не нужно, не надо, незачем (present or future reference)*

- **needn't + the Perfect Infinitive** shows that the action refers to **the past** and that an unnecessary action was carried out. You are often implying that the person didn't know at the time that their action was not necessary. (**past reference**) (*need't have done – передает значение отсутствия необходимости совершить действие в прошлом, которое кто-то совершил*)

- *need't have done – зря, не нужно было, незачем было, не надо было, не к чему было (past reference)*

- He **needn't do** it just now.
- You **needn't be afraid** of me
- You **needn't have spent** all the money. Now we've got nothing left. Зря ты потратила деньги.
- I **needn't have gone** to the office yesterday. Я зря сходил в офис вчера.
- **Need I repeat** it? (or, more commonly: **Do I have to repeat** it?)
- **Need I tell** you what has happened? (or, more commonly: **Do I have to tell** you what has happened?)
- **Need she come** tomorrow? (or, more commonly: **Does she have to come** tomorrow?/ **Will she have to come** tomorrow?)

1a. Absence of necessity. It is expressed by the negative forms of 'need' and 'to have to'

- **Present reference:**

- You **don't need to water** the flowers. (**need** – a regular verb)/You **needn't water** the flowers. (**need** – a modal verb)/You **don't have to water** the flowers. = It is **not** necessary to do something./It is **unnecessary** to do something.

Confer:

<p>. He doesn't have to get up early on Sundays. Ему не приходится/не надо/не нужно рано вставать по воскресеньям;</p> <p>. He doesn't need to get up early on Sundays. Ему не надо/не нужно рано вставать по воскресеньям.</p> <p>. He needn't get up early on Sunday. Ему не надо/не нужно рано вставать в воскресенье.</p>	<p>doesn't have to get up - <i>the absence of necessity is based on external circumstances</i></p> <p>doesn't need to get up - не надо/не нужно; the regular verb 'need' is more common for <i>the habitual action</i> or to talk about <i>general necessity</i> or to talk about <i>the particular occasion</i></p> <p>needn't get up – the speaker gives the authority/permission for non-performance of the action. The modal verb 'need' is more common <i>only for one particular occasion</i></p>
<p>. You needn't cut the grass, I'll do it later.</p> <p>. You don't need to cut the grass, I'll do it later.</p> <p>. You needn't do the cleaning, I'll do it tomorrow.</p> <p>. You don't need to do the cleaning, I'll do it tomorrow.</p>	<p>We can use 'needn't' or 'don't need to' to say that something is <i>not necessary for the particular occasion</i>. The speaker gives the <i>permission</i> not to do something.</p>
<p>You don't need to be 18 to get into a disco/ discotheque.</p> <p>You needn't be 18 to get into a disco/discotheque.</p>	<p>To talk about <i>a general necessity</i>, we prefer 'don't need to'</p>

(**Note:** Чтобы позволить кому-то *не делать чего-либо в некоторой конкретной ситуации*, можно использовать оба сочетания 'needn't' и 'don't need to'.

В том случае, когда речь идет о некоторой *общей закономерности*, лучше использовать **don't need to**.

. You **needn't dust** the floor now. I'll do it later./You **don't need to dust** the floor now. I'll do it later. Тебе не обязательно **сейчас** мести пол. Я сделаю это потом.

. In many countries people **don't need to boil** water before they drink it. Во многих странах нет необходимости кипятить воду перед тем, как ее пьешь. (здесь лучше **не** использовать **needn't**)).

Past reference:

- I **didn't need to buy** this book. (**need** – a regular verb)/I **didn't have to buy** this book. = It was not necessary to do something in the past, and it **wasn't done**. (= I **didn't buy** the book.) Мне **не пришлось/не надо было** покупать эту книгу.
- I **needn't have bought** this book. (**need** – a modal verb) = We think something that *was* done is not necessary. (= I **did buy** the book. / It wasn't necessary for me to buy this book **but I did**.) Я **зря** купил эту книгу.
- She **didn't need to fill in** an application form. (It wasn't necessary for her to do it, and we don't know whether she did it or not.) Ей не надо было заполнять бланк заявления.
- You **needn't have taken** so much luggage with you. (You **did** although it wasn't necessary.) Ты **зря** взял так много багажа с собой.

Confer:

<p>• I didn't have to cook breakfast because my sister had done it for me. Мне не пришлось готовить завтрак, так как моя сестра уже приготвила его.</p> <p>I didn't need to cook breakfast because my sister had done it for me. Мне не надо было готовить завтрак, так как моя сестра уже приготвила его.</p>	<p>• didn't have to cook – the action was unnecessary and it didn't take place.</p> <p>didn't need to cook – the action was unnecessary and it didn't take place as it was known at the time that the action was not necessary + or, on the other hand, the action was unnecessary but we don't know whether it was in fact done or not unless you are given more information.</p>
<p>I needn't have said it to them. Then they would never have known. Я зря сказала им это./Мне не надо было говорить им это. Тогда они никогда бы не узнали об этом.</p>	<p>needn't have said – the action was unnecessary but it was carried out. /We know that something happened in the past although it was not necessary.</p>

Note 1: In Interrogative sentences '**need**' is used when there is a strong element of negation or doubt or when the speaker expects a negative answer.

- **Need** she go there?
- **Need** I help you?

Note 2: In Negative sentences the negation is not always combined with the verb, but may be expressed by other parts of the sentence.

- I **don't think** we **need mention** him at all.
- I **need hardly say** that I agree with you. (= It is almost unnecessary for me to say that I agree with you; *formal context*)
- Cf.: I **hardly need to say** that I agree with you. (*less formal context*)
- I **need scarcely point out** that there is a water shortage at the moment. (= It is almost unnecessary for me to point out that there is a water shortage at the moment; *formal context*)
- Cf.: I **scarcely need to point out** that there is a water shortage at the moment; *less formal context*
- The changes **need only be** small to make the proposals acceptable. (- *formal context*) Cf.: The changes **only need to be** small to make the proposals acceptable; *less formal context*

Note 3: In Indirect Speech ‘**needn’t do**’ (absence of necessity) can remain unchanged or can be replaced by **didn’t need to do/didn’t have to do** (*present reference*) or **wouldn’t have to** (*future reference*);
‘**needn’t have done**’ remains unchanged

<p>The teacher said, “You needn’t come.”</p> <p>“You needn’t prepare so much food for tomorrow,” Fiona said to me.</p> <p>“You needn’t have given me so much money,” John said to Helen.</p>	<p>The teacher said that we needn’t come. / The teacher said that we didn’t need to come. / The teacher said that we didn’t have to come.</p> <p>Fiona said that I wouldn’t have to prepare so much food for the next day.</p> <p>John told Helen that she needn’t have given him so much money.</p>
---	---

2. ‘need + to-Infinitive’; ‘need + -ing form’

- The regular verb ‘**need**’ is followed by **the Infinitive** only if **a living being is the subject**.
 - John and his brother **need to paint** the house.
 - My friend **needs to learn** Spanish.
 - He **will need to drive** alone tonight.
- If **a lifeless thing (an inanimate object) is the subject** of this verb, the verb is followed by **a gerund** or the verb **to be + Participle II**. (the *-ing form* has a passive meaning)
 - The grass **needs cutting.** or The grass **needs to be cut.**
 - The television **needs repairing.** or The television **needs to be repaired.**
 - The carpet **needs cleaning.** or The carpet **needs to be cleaned.**
 - The flowers **need watering.** or The flowers **need to be watered.**

3. Confer:

- Тебе **не надо** было приходить. (**не надо** было = **не следовало** было; **не надо** было = зря)
- = Тебе **не следовало** было приходить. You **shouldn’t have come** (because you are ill.) – The action is undesirable.
- = Ты **зря** пришел. You **needn’t have come** (because the lesson doesn’t take place.) – The action is unnecessary.

4. ‘must needs’ or ‘needs must’ = must necessarily - **неприменно, обязательно, по необходимости** (чаще употребляется с ‘must’). The form is always ‘**needs**’ not ‘**need**’ and the expression is usually used ironically or sarcastically (с сарказмом, насмешливо, язвительно)

- He knew they were vegetarians, and he **must needs take** them to a steak house.

- He **must needs go** away just when I want his help. (= He foolishly or stupidly insists on going away when I want his help.) Ну, конечно, когда мне нужна его помощь, ему **непременно** надо уйти.
- He **needs must go**; he **must needs go**. Ему **непременно** надо идти.
- The task of reviewing a dictionary **must needs be elephantine**. Просмотреть словарь – это всегда дело, требующее огромных усилий. (elephantine adj. [ˌeliˈfæntaɪn] требующий огромных сил, усилий (о задаче, деле))
- **Needs must** when the devil drives. (**proverb**) = Circumstances may compel us to act in a certain way. Приходится, когда чёрт гонит. (т.е. против необходимости ничего не поделаешь.) Ср. Против рожа не попрешь. Плетью обуха не перешибёшь.

5 a) ‘need be’ and ‘if need be’ are convenient *idioms* for use in the present or future

- We’ll go by bus **if need be**. (*if need be* - в случае необходимости, если потребуются)
- We’ll leave earlier **than need be**.

b) In the past we replace them by ‘(if) necessary’ (по необходимости)

- We left earlier **than was necessary**.

Exercises

Exercise 105. Explain the meaning of **need** in the following sentences and translate them into Russian:

1. He needs sea air. 2. We don’t need anything else. 3. I needn’t finish my sentence, for you already know what I was going to say. 4. If you don’t like the cocktail, you needn’t drink it. 5. “Do you remember what you did when you were twenty-five?” “You need not have reminded me of it.” 6. Need we insist upon the date? 7. You needn’t worry. 8. Need you bring your girl-friend with you? 9. She said that if he didn’t like to come to her parties he needn’t come at all. 10. I was rather afraid that he might act as though we were intimate friends, which would have been embarrassing. But I need not have worried. 11. Does he need to study more at home? “Why don’t you go and look at the snake?” her mother suggested. “You needn’t go up close.” 12. It’s not easy to hold responsibility. I needn’t tell you that. 13. Angela opened the door and walked in. Her daughter was still up. “You needn’t have stayed up, waiting for me.” said Angela. 14. What else do you need? 15. You needn’t have carried all these parcels yourself. The shop would have delivered them if you had asked them. 16. I must go at once, but you needn’t. 17. You needn’t have waited for me; I could have found the way all right. 18. You needn’t pay me back the money you owe me until next week. 19. I needn’t have made so much food for the party. Nobody was very hungry. (= It was not necessary to make so much food, but I did, – it was a waste of time.) 20. She didn’t need to wait. (= It was not necessary to wait; we do not know whether she did or not.) 21. I didn’t need to unlock the door because it was already unlocked.

Exercise 106. Underline the more likely answer. If they are equally likely, underline them both.

1. You **needn't close/don't need to close** the door. I'm just going out.
2. In most developed countries, people **needn't boil/don't need to boil** water before they drink it.
3. Hannah has agreed to organise the party, so she said that the rest of us **needn't do /don't need to do** anything.
4. I've brought the car, so you **needn't carry/don't need to carry** your bags to the station.
5. You **needn't have/don't need to have** any qualifications to be a politician.
6. Now that it has been eradicated, doctors **needn't vaccinate/don't need to vaccinate** against smallpox.
7. You **needn't go/don't need to go** to the supermarket. I went shopping earlier.
8. In many countries you **needn't pay/don't need to pay** to use public libraries.

Exercise 107. Read the situations and make sentences with **needn't have**.

1. George went out. He took an umbrella because he thought it was going to rain. But it didn't rain. **He needn't have taken an umbrella.**
2. Ann bought some eggs when she went shopping. When she got home, she found that she already had plenty of eggs. She
3. A friend got angry with you and shouted at you. You think this was unnecessary. Later you say to him/her: You
4. Brian had no money, so he sold his car. A few days later he won some money in a lottery. He
5. When we went on holiday, we took the camera with us but we didn't use it in the end.
6. I thought I was going to miss my train so I rushed to the station. But the train was late and in the end I had to wait 20 minutes.

Exercise 108. Write two sentences for each situation. Use **needn't have** in the first sentence and **could have** in the second (as in the example).

1. Why did you rush? Why didn't you take your time?
..... **You needn't have rushed. You could have taken your time.**
2. Why did you walk home? Why didn't you take a taxi?
3. Why did you stay at a hotel? Why didn't you stay with us?
4. Why did she phone me in the middle of the night? Why didn't she phone me in the morning?
5. Why did you leave without saying anything? Why didn't you say goodbye to me?
.....

Exercise 109. Supply **needn't have ...** or **didn't have to...** and the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

1. I ... (phone) the mechanic. I learnt later that Michael had already phoned him.
2. I (phone) the mechanic. I knew that Michael had already phoned him.
3. Kate ... (make) lunch when she came home, because her husband had already done it.
4. I ... (wake) her up because she was awake before me.
5. You ... (bring) your umbrella after all. It hasn't rained.
6. Mother ... (cook) a meal last night as we were going out.
7. I ... (cook) a meal last night because we went out and the food I prepared was uneaten.
8. You ... (pay) the man. He didn't deserve it.
9. Claire ... (bring) the tape. We didn't plan to listen to it.
10. Ann ... (buy) any eggs as on coming home she found that she had plenty of eggs.

Exercise 110. Fill in the gaps with **needn't have** or **didn't need to** and the correct form of the verb in brackets, as in the example.

1. I had been to the restaurant many times before so I ...**didn't need to use**... (use) a map to find my way there.
2. You (come) here to tell me. You could have called me instead.
3. We didn't go abroad for our holidays last year so we(take) our passports with us.
4. I cooked dinner last night so we (order) a takeaway.
5. You (wash) your suit. I would have taken it to the dry-cleaner's for you.
6. I(buy) anything from the supermarket so I went straight home after work.
7. My brother told me he was taking two sleeping bags so I (pack) one for myself.
8. You(call) from a phone box. You could have used my mobile phone instead.
9. I (send) Tom's birthday card because I knew I was going to see him on his birthday.
10. You (book) the tickets yourself. My secretary would have done it for you.
11. I bought a new car last year, and then a month later I won one in a competition. So I(to spend) all that money.
12. I(to have) an interview. They accepted me without one.
13. Sue was feeling a lot better by the weekend, so we (to do) her shopping for her.
14. I got a lift to the station, so I(to take) a taxi after all.

Exercise 111. Here are some extracts from a speech made by the managing director of a company to her employees. Correct any mistakes.

1. I need hardly to tell you how important it is that we win this order.
2. I don't have to remind you that we are competing with two other companies.
3. We don't need to allow our competitors to gain an advantage over us.
4. We were delighted that we needn't have sold off our subsidiary company last year.

5. We mustn't allow our production rates to drop.
6. You mustn't work at weekends for the moment.
7. You needn't to worry about redundancies.

Exercise 112. Choose the correct item.

1. Ben is very rude. He have talked to Sarah that way.
A. could B. shouldn't C. mustn't
2. It's very late. The children be sleeping.
A. must B. can't C. shouldn't
3. We finish the project by Friday or else we'll lose the client.
A. might B. needn't C. have to
4. You made anything for the party. I have plenty of food.
A. needn't have B. needn't C. mustn't
5. The north of England get very cold during the winter.
A. may B. can C. could
6. You write and thank everyone for the birthday presents they gave you.
A. shouldn't B. need C. ought to
7. John isn't at home. He be at the gym.
A. might B. couldn't C. can't
8. Susan has a broken leg. She gone skiing.
A. can't have B. couldn't C. may
9. It's your own fault you crashed the car. You been driving so fast.
A. might not have B. may not have C. shouldn't have
10. I call David now? - Yes, he said it was an emergency.
A. Need B. Needn't C. Could
11. That be Eve on the phone. She doesn't know our new number.
A. mustn't B. needn't C. can't
12. Why are Bob and Moira late? – Well, they missed the 5 o'clock bus.
A. could have been B. might have C. should
13. You bring your tent with you. We can both sleep in mine.
A. need B. don't need to C. needn't have
14. You have brought so many jumpers. I could have lent you some of mine.
A. needn't B. couldn't C. didn't need to
15. Diana must the stage props all night. She looks extremely tired.
A. be preparing B. have been preparing C. have prepared

Exercise 113. Translate the following sentences into English using **need**.

1. Тому нужно новое пальто. 2. Ему не требуется новых ботинок. 3. Нужна ему новая рубашка? 4. Работа требовала времени и терпения. 5. Нужно перевести (чтобы кто-нибудь перевел) того слепого через улицу. 6. Мои туфли требуют починки. 7. Ему необходимо работать так поздно? 8. Ему нет необходимости работать так поздно, не правда ли? 9. Вам нужно отправиться пораньше, чтобы приехать засветло. 10. Вам придется/Вам надо поторопиться, если вы хотите

попасть на поезд, который отходит в четверть третьего. 11. Нам не нужно было спешить (и мы не спешили). 12. Нам не нужно было бы спешить (т. е. Мы спешили, а теперь видим, что в этом не было необходимости).

Exercise 114. *Translate the following sentences into English using need.*

1. То, что она сделала, так глупо, что нам незачем обсуждать это. 2. Это было так близко, что даже Алан, который не любил ходить пешком, согласился, что им не нужно брать его машину. 3. Нам не к чему варить всю картошку. 4. Нам нужно переодеться к обеду? 5. У нас масса времени. Мы зря спешили. 6. А нам обязательно туда идти? 7. Тебе незачем тратить на них все деньги. 8. Я сказал твоему дяде, что поговорю с тобой. – Ты напрасно беспокоился. Я пообещал своим родителям побыть здесь еще немного. 9. Он положил конверт на стол. «Деньги все там, – сказал он. – Можешь не пересчитывать их». 10. Ты знаешь детей. Они все ломают. Мне нет нужды говорить тебе об этом. 11. Он знал, что ему не надо никому ничего объяснять. 12. Я думаю, что нам незачем уделять ей столько внимания. 13. Тебе незачем бояться меня. 14. Нам не обязательно слушать всех ораторов.

Exercise 115. *Revision: translate the following sentences expressing absence of necessity into Russian using have to or need.*

1. Рассказать тебе, как все это случилось? Не надо. Я все знаю. 2. Погода сейчас теплая, и мне не надо топить камин вечером. 3. Он четко осознавал, что он хочет сказать, и ему не надо было подбирать слова. 4. Мне не надо было ничего покупать, так как мой муж не обедал дома в тот день. 5. У него сейчас каникулы. Ему не надо работать до осени. 6. Скажи моему сыну, что ему не надо работать до осени. Ему надо хорошо отдохнуть дома. 7. Она знала, что ей не надо присутствовать при их разговоре. 8. У него не было необходимости жить летом в Лондоне.

Exercise 116. *Revision: translate the following sentences into English using shouldn't, oughtn't to or needn't followed by a Perfect Infinitive.*

1. Тебе не следовало уступать ее капризам. 2. Тебе не надо было приводить своего приятеля сегодня. Я плохо себя чувствую. 3. Мне не следовало говорить им этого. 4. Ты зря заказал номер в гостинице. У нас есть свободная спальня. 5. Тебе не следовало жениться так рано. 6. Ты зря написал ему об этом. Он теперь будет беспокоиться. 7. Ты зря приехал в Лондон. Здесь его нет. 8. Тебе не надо было покупать эту машину. Она очень дорогая. 9. Ты зря приехал на машине. Здесь нет моста через реку. 10. Зря ты был с нею так груб. Она теперь плачет.

Exercise 117. *Choose the most suitable response to each comment or question.*

a) A. What did I do wrong?

- B. 1. You shouldn't have connected these two wires.
2. You didn't have to connect these two wires.
- b) A. Why is the dog barking?
B. 1. It should have heard something.
2. It must have heard something.
- c) A. Why are you home so early?
B. 1. I needn't have worked this afternoon.
2. I didn't have to work this afternoon.
- d) A. Why did you worry about me? I didn't take any risks.
B. 1. You must have been injured.
2. You could have been injured.
- e) A. You forgot my birthday again!
B. 1. Sorry, I should have looked in my diary.
2. Sorry, I had to look in my diary.
- f) A. We had a terrible crossing on the boat in a storm.
B. 1. That didn't have to be very pleasant!
2. That can't have been very pleasant!
- g) A. Where were you yesterday? You didn't turn up!
B. 1. I had to go to London.
2. I must have gone to London.
- h) A. What do you think about the election?
B. 1. The Freedom Party had to win.
2. The Freedom Party should have won.
- i) A. There's a lot of food left over from the party, isn't here?
B. 1. Yes, you couldn't have made so many sandwiches.
2. Yes, you needn't have made so many sandwiches,
- j) A. What do you think has happened to Tony?
B. 1. I don't know, he should have got lost.
2. I don't know, he might have got lost.

Exercise 118. Tick the correct item, as in the example.

- 1. Dan **can't be** a teacher.
a) I'm sure Dan isn't a teacher. ✓
b) I think Dan isn't a teacher.
- 2. **Need I take** the tablets every day?
a) Is it a good idea to take the tablets every day?
b) Is it necessary to take the tablets every day?
- 3. You **needn't have bought** me flowers.
a) You bought me flowers.
b) You didn't buy me flowers.
- 4. If it is hot tomorrow, we **might go** to the beach.
a) We will definitely go to the beach tomorrow.
b) It is possible that we will go to the beach tomorrow.
- 5. You **ought to have apologised** to Mary.

- a) You apologised to Mary.
- b) You didn't apologise to Mary.
- 6. You **mustn't steal**.
 - a) It is against the law to steal.
 - b) It isn't necessary to steal.
- 7. Alison **has to work** on Saturday. Her boss told her so.
 - a) Alison wants to work on Saturday.
 - b) Alison's boss wants her to work on Saturday.
- 8. Sam **must have finished** lunch by now.
 - a) I'm sure Sam has finished lunch.
 - b) I'm sure Sam hasn't finished lunch.

Exercise 119. *Translate the following sentences into English. (Modal Verbs)*

1. Должно быть, он шел этой дорогой: вот следы его ног. 2. Не стоило нам спешить. Мы пришли слишком рано. 3. Хотите чашку чая? 4. Хотите, я куплю овощи? 5. Помочь тебе нести сумки? 6. Не пообедать ли нам в ресторане? 7. Закрыть окно? (Я закрою окно?) 8. Купить яблок? 9. Я потеряла сумку. Что мне делать? 10. Студенты не должны есть во время лекций. 11. Нельзя оставлять детей без присмотра! 12. Я не должен объяснять тебе (нет необходимости объяснять), что это за люди. 13. Не нужно быть особенно умным, чтобы решить эту задачу. 14. Мы не обязаны снижать налоги (нет необходимости снижать налоги). 15. Не обязательно быть богатым, чтобы жить счастливо. 16. Я должен пойти и поговорить с ней. (Она меня сама вызвала). 17. Я должен пойти и поговорить с ней. (Я сам хочу с ней кое-что обсудить). 18. Я должен съесть три гамбургера, чтобы почувствовать себя сытым. 19. Он должен спать ночью как минимум девять часов. 20. Мне не пришлось ничего объяснять.

Exercise 120. *Fill in the gaps with **must**, **mustn't** or **needn't/don't have to**, as in the example.*

- 1. A: You ... **needn't/don't have to** do the washing-up. I'll do it.
B: Thanks, Mum.
- 2. A: Paul go to the dentist more often.
B: I know. His teeth are in terrible condition.
- 3. A: If we want to see the beginning of the film, we leave now.
B: Alright. I'm ready.
- 4. A: You speak with your mouth full.
B: I know. It's very rude.
- 5. A: Shall I mow the lawn?
B: No, you I did it earlier.
- 6. A: I walk the dog now?
B: Yes, it'll be dark in half an hour.
- 7. A: John and I are going to the theatre on Friday night.
B: You get a baby-sitter. I'll take care of the children for you.

8. A: You forget to post those letters.
B: I'll post them on my way to work.

9. Shall

Shall is never a purely modal verb. It always combines its modal meaning with the function of an auxiliary expressing futurity. As a rule **shall** as a modal verb is not translated into Russian, its meaning is rendered by emphatic intonation. (следует помнить, что **shall** и **will** с ярко выраженным модальным значением не подлежат сокращению, кроме отрицательных форм – **shan't, won't**)

Shall expresses:

1. Compulsion (принуждение), **strict order, prohibition**. In this meaning it is always used with the second and third persons and has a *strong* stress.

- He **shall** go there now. Он **должен** пойти туда сейчас.
- “She **shall** go off tomorrow, the little artful creature,” said Mrs. Sedley, with great energy. «Она уедет завтра же, эта маленькая интриганка», – энергично заявила миссис Седли.
- You **shall** all **stay** behind for thirty minutes and clean the room.
- When he comes in, nobody **shall** say a word.

2. Offer. We use **shall** in questions with ‘**I**’ to make offers (with **shall** ‘offers’ are more tentative than with **will** in the affirmative). (tentative-неуверенный, осторожный, нерешительный = less direct)

- **Shall I wash** up this evening? (Cf. Sit down. I'll wash up this evening.)
 - **Shall I carry** your bag for you? – **That's very kind of you. Thank you. / No, thank you.**
 - **Shall I open** the window? (= Do you want me to open the window?)
 - What **shall I do** for you?
- Compare **shall I...?** and **will you...?**:
- **Shall I shut** the door? (= Do you want me to shut the door?)
 - **Will you shut** the door? (= I want you to shut the door.)

3. Suggestion. We use **shall** in questions with ‘**we**’ to make suggestions.

- **Shall I get** you the chair? – **Yes, please.** Принести вам стул, – Пожалуйста.

- **Shall** we go out for a meal tonight? – *Mmm. I'd love to.* (=Why don't we go out? / How about going out?)
- **Shall** we go for a swim tomorrow? – *Yes, let's . / Yes, let's, shall we? / No, I'd rather not. / No, I'd rather we didn't.*
- **Shall** we go? – *Just a minute. I'm not ready yet.*
- **To ask for suggestions or advice**, we can use *shall* with a question word.
 - What **shall** we do about Tom if he doesn't get into a university?
 - What **shall** we do? We haven't got any money. – We could ask Dad.
 - I've got no time left. What **shall** I do? (= What do you suggest I should do?)
 - Where **shall** we go this evening?
- We use '*shall*' in question tags after '*let's*' to make suggestions.
 - **Let's** forget about it now and talk about something else, **shall** we?
- **In Am. E.** '**should**' is used in preference to '**shall**' for suggestions.
 - Let's decide what to do this evening. **Should** we go bowling? (bowling - игра в кегли, боулинг)

4. Asking for instruction. We use *shall* in questions with '**I, we, he, she**' to ask about the wish of the person addressed.

- **Shall** I shut the door, ma'am? (=Do you want me to shut the door?) Закрыть дверь, сударыня?
- **Shall** he go there? (=Do you want him to go there?) Идти ему туда?
- **Shall** I translate the text? – *Please, do.* Мне переводить текст? – Переводите, пожалуйста.

4a. Formal instruction, especially in official documents.

- The secretary **shall** **minute** (вести) the proceedings (протоколы) of each meeting.

5. Threat or warning. In this meaning it is also used in the second and third persons and with a *weak* stress. (говорящий берет на себя ответственность за выполнение действия)

- "That's the last time!" she cried. "You **shall** never see me again!" Вы никогда меня больше не увидите!
- You **shall** **repent** of this neglect of duty. Вы еще раскаетесь в том, что пренебрегаете долг.
- You **shall** **pay** for this, you **shall**.

6. Promise. It is also used with the second and third persons and with a *weak* stress. (выполнение действия становится как бы личной ответственность говорящего)

- Don't be afraid, Jane, I saw it was an accident. You **shall** **not be punished**. Не бойся, Джейн, я видела, что это произошло случайно. Тебя не накажут.
- I **shall** **make** you happy, see if I don't. You **shall** **do** what you like, spend what you like. Я сделаю вас счастливой, вот увидите. Вы будете делать что хотите и тратить сколько хотите.
- You **shall** **have** tea now. Сейчас ты выпьешь чай.
- You **shall** **do** as you please.
- Tell him he **shall** **have** the books tomorrow. Скажи ему, что он получит книги завтра.

7. Unwillingness or refusal to do something.

- Go and buy some milk, will you, love? – No, I **shan't**. I'm busy.
- Drink your milk, Jimmy! – I **shan't**!

8. We use *shall* in questions asking about decisions with 'I' and 'we' only.

- **Shall I** see you next week, then?

Exercises

Exercise 121. Comment on the meaning of **shall**. Translate the sentences into Russian.

1. Where shall we put this vase? 2. I'll begin again and you shan't stop me this time! 3. He shall repent (раскаиваться; сожалеть) for this neglect of duty. 4. You shall have it back tomorrow. 5. He shall never come here again! I'll take care of it. 6. 'How long shall you be away?' Sarah asked. 7. 'Shall I leave the candle for a little while?' I asked. 8. I give you my word; the work shall be done on time. 9. Persons under 18 shan't be employed in night-work. 10. I'll have coffee with you and then you shall play and sing for me. 11. I must ask that what I tell you shall be understood to be entirely confidential. 12. You shall not search my rooms. You have no right to do it. I forbid you! 13. He hasn't seen you and he shan't. 14. The police shall take you up (арестовывать). 15. You shall have all the news I can send you. 16. 'Shall I order a taxi?' he asked. 17. That shall be put an end to now and for ever! 18. He shall get his money. 18. When he come in, nobody shall say a word. (order)

Exercise 122. Make **suggestions** to a friend for the following situations. Begin each sentence with **Shall we ... ?**

1. You feel like going out this evening. ... **Shall we go out this evening?** ...
2. You feel like having a snack in the nearest cafe.
3. You feel like having a holiday abroad.
4. You feel like going to a concert tonight.
5. You feel like travelling first class.
6. You feel like finishing the experiment sooner.
7. You feel like visiting your friends in the country.
8. You feel like going for a ride in the country.

Exercise 123. Complete the sentences using **shall I ...** and the most suitable of these verbs: **wait tell get invite paint ask play talk**

1. How much money ... **shall I get** ... from the bank?
2. Where ... for you?
3. What colour ... my kitchen? Have you got any ideas?
4. What ... my parents about it?

5. Who ... chess with?
6. Where ... to him?
7. Who ... to help me?
8. Who ... to my party?

Exercise 124. What do you say in these situations? Write sentences with **shall I ...?** or **shall we ...?**

1. You and a friend want to do something this evening but you don't know what. You ask your friend. **What shall we do this evening?**.....
2. You try on a jacket in a shop. You are not sure whether to buy it or not. You ask a friend for advice. it?
3. It's Ann's birthday next week. You want to give her a present but you don't know what. You ask a friend for advice. What
4. You and a friend are going on holiday together but you haven't decided where. You ask him/her
5. You and a friend are going out. You haven't decided whether to go by car or to walk. You ask him/her.or
6. Your friend wants you to phone later. You don't know what time to phone. You ask him/her.

Exercise 125. Translate the following sentences into English using **shall** wherever possible.

1. Мне сейчас ему позвонить? 2. Она пожалеет, что сказала это, я уверен. 3. Вы не покинете комнату, пока я вам не разрешу. 4. Зажечь свет? В комнате становится темно. 5. Вы получите ваш заказ завтра, не сомневайтесь. 6. Мне читать? 7. Нам идти наверх? 8. Сколько мне заплатить носильщику? 9. Когда мы узнаем что-нибудь, вы непременно услышите об этом. 10. Вы отпустите меня домой? - Нет. Ты во вторник отправишься пароходом в Сан-Франциско. 11. Это можно сделать и это будет сделано, если ты только поможешь мне. 12. «Тебе поиграть?» – спросила она. – «Да, пожалуйста». 13. Когда он говорит: «Сделай», я отвечаю: «Будет сделано». 14. «Я хочу, чтобы этот багаж отнесли в мою комнату». «Его сейчас же отнесут наверх, сэр».

10. Will

Will is hardly ever a purely modal verb. It generally combines its modal meaning with the function of an auxiliary expressing futurity. In most cases **will** is rendered in Russian by emphatic intonation, but sometimes the verb *хотеть* is used. It is used with all persons but mostly with the first person.

The modal verb **will** expresses:

1. Polite request. These requests are informal and we usually use them with people we know quite well.

- **Will** you **help** me? – *Yes, I will.* / *I'm afraid I can't.* ('No, I won't' – is not common because it is impolite. It means: 'I don't want to help you'.)
- **Will** you **give** me a piece of bread, for I am very hungry? – *Yes, of course.*
- **Will** you **give** me a call when you get to the hotel? – *Yes, of course, I will.*
- **Will** you kindly **turn** that stereo down?
- **Will** you **hold** the door open for me please?
- **Will** you please **be** quiet? I'm trying to concentrate.

○ **Note:** We can make a **request** more insistent (настойчивый) by using '**will you**' as a question tag. If we make a request in this way, we do not expect the answer to be '**no**'.

- Come and look at this, **will you**?
- Pick up my suit from the cleaner's when you're out, **will you**?

2. Offer made at the time of speaking. We usually contract **will** to **'ll** with this use. We use **will** in the affirmative sentences, both to make offers to do something ourselves and on behalf of other people. (I'll = I'm willing to do something)

- You are busy. I'll **do** it for you.
 - That bag looks heavy. I'll **help** you with it.
 - Come over after work. I'll **make** a meal for you.
 - I'll **pick** you **up** at the airport if you like.
 - I'll **give** you a hand with this.
 - That's the phone. I'll **get** it for you, **shall I**?
 - Give him your suitcase. He'll **carry** it for you.
 - Don't worry about the bus. Nick'll **give** you a lift.
 - Your car sounds a bit rough. Harry **will** take a quick look at it, if you like.
 - You are busy. I'll **collect** the children from school.
- We can use **will** or **won't** *in questions* when we **offer** something to another person.
 - **Will** you have some more of the pie? (neutral)
 - **Won't** you have some more of the pie? (more encouraging)
 - **What will** you **have**?
 - **Invitation.** We can use **will** or **won't** *in questions* when we **invite** somebody to do something.
 - **Will** you **come** into my parlour? Не пройдете в гостиную?

3. Promise

- Don't worry. We **will help** him. – Не беспокойтесь. Мы ему поможем (мы обещаем).
- I promise I **won't tell** anyone what happened.
- My government **will turn** round the economy and reduce unemployment.
- I **will be** careful with the car, I promise.
- I'll **buy** you a bicycle for your birthday.
- I'll **give** you another opportunity to get the correct answer.
- Thanks for lending me the money. I'll **pay** you back on Friday.

4. Threat or warning. (**will** фактически имеет значение сильного желания, намерения)

- Stop making that noise or I **will scream!** – Прекратите шуметь, или я закричу (я обещаю).
- If you play that CD one more time, I'll **throw** it out of the window.
- Give it back or we'll **call** the Police!

5. Orders, rules and formal instructions.

- You **will** all **stay** behind for thirty minutes and clean the room.
- The judge's decision **will be** final.
- You **will do** exactly as I say.

6. Decision (решение), volition (воля, хотение) made at the time of speaking. We usually contract **will** to **'ll** with this use.

- 'It's Jane's birthday today.' 'Is it? I'll **buy** her some flowers.'
- 'Somebody is ringing at the door' 'I'll **get** it.'
- I'll **have** the steak, please.
- I'll **see** you tomorrow. Bye!
- Give me a ring some time. We'll **go** out for a drink.
- Jane, there's someone at the door! – OK, I'll **get** it.
- I think I'll **lie** down for a moment.
- 'What would you like to drink?' 'I'll **have** an orange juice, please.'
- 'Did you phone Ruth?' 'Oh, no, I forgot. I'll **phone** her now.'
- The doctor **will act** as a witness to your signature. She doesn't mind doing that sort of thing.

○ We often use *I think I'll....* and *I don't think I'll ...*:

- I feel a bit hungry. I **think I'll have** something to eat.
- I **don't think I'll go out** tonight. I'm tired.

7. **Persistence** (настойчивость, упорство) referring to the present or to the future, **determination** (решительность; решимость), **intention** (намерение, стремление), **willingness** (готовность, желание), **unwillingness** (нежелание, неохота; нерасположение) or **refusal** (отказ, неприятие) to do something. In speech we stress **will/won't** to indicate determination, especially when the action is decided on or the determination is strengthened at the time of speaking.

- I **will** go with you, I have no choice. Я поеду с вами, у меня нет выбора.
- Don't tell me about it. - But I **will** tell you. Не говорите мне про это. – А я все равно скажу. (**will** – буду, непременно, обязательно, охотно)
- I **will write** as soon as I can. Я непременно напишу, как только смогу.
- I **will be** there to help. Я обязательно там буду и помогу.
- I can and **will learn** this language! Я могу выучить и обязательно выучу этот язык!
- Drink your milk, Jimmy! – I **won't**!
- Mum! Sue **won't give** me back my pencil case.
- I've tried to advise her but she **won't listen**.
- We enjoy going out with Frank and Carol, but they **will argue** in public!
- Carol **will leave** the lights on when she goes out of the office.
- She begins to act very strangely. She **will not speak**, she **will not eat**; finally she dies. Она начинает вести себя очень странно. Она не желает говорить, она не желает есть, наконец, она умирает.
- I'll take the money anyway! – You **won't**! (= I refuse you.) – I **will**.
- I **won't** do it! (= I refuse to do it.) – Yes, you **will**! (= I insist that you should do it)
- I **will come** with you at the weekend, whatever my parents say!
- I **will give up** smoking!

○ *Note*: we do not usually contract **will** to **'ll** with this use, as we usually stress the modal verb **will**, but we can make the contraction when we stress the adverb:

- He'll never agree to that!

8. Characteristic habits, behaviour or quality, repeated actions. (*Will* can sometimes be used in place of *the Simple Present* to refer to a person's characteristic habits or behaviour; **will** is unstressed.)

- In fine weather, he **will** often **sit** in the sun for hours. *Cf.* In fine weather, he often **sits** in the sun for hours.
 - Danny **will sit** and **look** at the sea for hours. (He has often done it and I'm sure he'll go on doing it.) Денни обычно сидит и часами смотрит на море.
 - He **will** always **complain** if he gets the opportunity.
 - This car **will hold** six people comfortably.
 - Oil **will float** on water.
 - Children **will** often **be full of life** when their parents are tired.
 - The dominant male of the group **will not tolerate** the presence of other males.
- Every day he **will work** for an hour in the garden. *Cf.* Every day he **works** for an hour in the garden. (This use of '**will**' meaning '*is in the habit of doing*' is often ambiguous (двусмысленный, неясный) and unnecessary since the Present Tense expresses the idea just as well or better.)
- **Note common fixed phrases with 'will':**
- *Boys will be boys.* Мальчишки всегда остаются мальчишками.
 - *Accidents will happen.* Несчастные случаи неизбежны (несчастный случай может произойти с каждым.)
 - *What will be will be.* -Чему быть, того не миновать.

9. We use *will/won't* to criticize inanimate (неживой, неодушевленный) **things** describing an annoying habit. We do not contract **will** as we *stress* it. (Speaking about lifeless things, the speaker is *annoyed* at something and speaks about a thing or a phenomenon of nature as if it possessed a will of its own; there is an element of personification here).

- It's no use trying to open the door, it **won't open**. Нечего стараться открыть эту дверь – она все равно не откроется.
- The key **won't fit** the lock.
- My pen **won't write**. Ручка никак не пишет.
- The stamp **won't stick** to the envelope.
- The car **won't start**. I wonder what's wrong with it.

10. Prediction (предсказание; прогноз). We use **will/won't** to *make predictions* about the *future*; *prediction* is based more on our opinion or our past experience than a fact.

- According to statistics, smokers **won't live** as long as non-smokers.
- I imagine the stadium **will be** full for the match on Saturday.
- People **will** always **say** the things you want to hear.
- Why not come over at the weekend? The children **will enjoy** seeing you again.
- It **will be** a difficult test to pass.

- These flowers **won't grow** under the tree. It's dark.
 - You **won't get** much sympathy from them.
 - You'll **be** sick if you eat all those sweets!
 - We'll **be** away for two weeks.
 - He's been found guilty of murder. He'll **be** in prison for a long time.
 - I think Laura **will do** very well in her exam. She works hard.
 - I am convinced that inflation **will fall** to 3 per cent next year.
 - Our love **will last** forever (вечно).
 - We'll still **be** here in twenty years.
 - He **will like** the idea, I'm sure.
- We can make predictions, intentions or decisions stronger or weaker by using certain adverbs, for example: *definitely* (определенно, точно, явно), *certainly* (конечно, естественно, непременно, несомненно, безусловно), *probably* (вероятно, наверное), *possibly* (возможно; может быть).
- You'll **certainly** like their new CD.
 - I **certainly** won't give you a lift to the station – it's only down the road!
 - The lecture **probably** won't start on time – they rarely do here.
 - You **probably** won't like their new single.
 - You **definitely** won't like the exhibition.
 - I have to say that I **definitely** won't attend the meeting.
 - He'll **no doubt** be late for the meeting.
- We use **will/won't have + past participle (the Future Perfect)** to make *predictions* about actions which we expect to be completed by a particular time in the future.
- *By the time you get home* I **will have cleaned** the house from top to bottom.
- Notice that we can use *other modal verbs* instead of '**will**' to talk about the future in a less certain way:
- By the time you get home I **will/may/should have cleaned** the house.

11. Certainty (уверенность; несомненный факт; достоверность) *about the present* (100% certainty). We make confident 'predictions' about the *present* based on our knowledge or previous experience or on current expectations or based on what we know about people and things, their routines, character and qualities. In this meaning '**will**' is an equivalent of '**must**' (должно быть, по-видимому, очевидно).

- There is a knock at the door. – That **will be** the postman. He always calls at this time (100% certainty). (Cf. That **must be** the postman (95% certainty). = You are fairly sure that this is true.)
- This **will be** my wife. (I know that she is due to phone about this time, and I therefore conclude that it is she who is phoning now.)
- That **will be** our train. Это, наверное, наш поезд.
- This **will be** just what she wants. Это, очевидно, то, чего она хочет.
- 'Rachel's in Turkey at the moment.' – 'I hope she's taken some winter clothes

because it **won't be** warm at this time of year.'

- It's five o'clock. Janet'**ll be** in Paris now. (We use '**will be**' to say that *we believe* something is certain. '*Certainty*' – *the speaker believes it's true.*) **Cf.** Janet isn't here at the moment. She's in France. (We use *the Present Simple* to state a fact *without expressing an opinion* as to certainty or otherwise (что-л. другое, противоположное) of the event).
- 'Shall I ask Sandra?' 'No, don't disturb her – she'**ll be working.**'
- **Certainty about the past.** To refer to something which we feel certain (быть уверенным) has happened (but do not actually know), we use **will have + past participle**:
 - We sent the invitations on Monday, so they **will have received** them by now. Why hasn't anyone replied? (This is similar to **must have + past participle**: We sent the invitations on Monday, so they **must have received** them by now.)
 - 'What time is it?' 'Half past twelve.' 'Well, the last bus **will have left.**'
- We use **won't have + past participle** to refer to something which we feel certain has not happened:
 - We sent the invitations by second-class post. They **won't have received** them yet. (This is similar to **can't have + past participle**: We sent the invitations by second-class post. They **can't have received** them yet.)

12. Very often **will** is used after **the conjunction if** in conditional sentences where it retains its modal meaning, that of **volition, willingness** (готовность). (**will = want; to be willing to**) (A sentence of this type is often a conditional sentence only in form; it is actually **a polite request.**)

- If you **will help** me, we can finish by six. Если вы согласитесь мне помочь, мы можем закончить к 6 часам.
- If you **will** wait, I'll see if Mr. Green is free.
- If you **will take** a seat for a moment, Mr. Frank will be with you soon. (=If you **are willing to take** a seat for a moment, Mr. Frank will be with you soon.)
- If you **will** hold these bags for me, I can open the door.
- If you **will clear** the table, I'll wash the dishes.
- If you **will wait** for me, I'll be very grateful.
- And if you **will excuse** me, I must be going.

Exercises

Exercise 126. Comment on the meaning of the verb **will**. Translate the sentences into Russian.

1. I will let you know, so you can be there.
2. Oil will float on water.
3. I will make your excuses to Margaret.
4. Will you go out on the terrace and look at the sunset?
5. I am afraid – if you will excuse me – I must join my wife.
6. Will you ask them to call

my carriage, please? 7. Will you go and look over the photograph album that I see here? 8. I will never speak to you again. 9. I suppose this will be the last ball of the season? 10. I smoke like a chimney! And my lighter won't work. 11. I want to be helpful to both; if you will let me. 12. Don't worry. I will be all right. 13. 'You must always come to me if anything goes wrong.' 'Of course, I will,' she said as if she were soothing him. 14. 'Do give my love to Christine,' said Dora. 'Surely I will,' said Michael. 15. Children, have you been playing with my umbrella? It won't open! 16. Will you have something to drink? 17. How long will your friends be here? 18. Will you come to tea tomorrow? 19. If you will wait here a moment, I'll fetch you a chair. 20. I will not listen to such foolish talk. 21. Children will say such things. 22. I will tell you what it is. 23. If you will help me, we can finish this in no time.

Exercise 127. Complete the sentences with *I'll* + a suitable verb.

1. I'm too tired to walk home. I think ... *I'll get* a taxi.
2. 'It's a bit cold in this room.' 'Is it? on the heating then.'
3. 'We haven't got any milk.' 'Oh, haven't we? and get some.'
4. 'Do you want me to do the washing-up?' 'No, it's all right it.'
5. 'I don't know how to use this computer.' 'OK, you.'
6. 'Would you like tea or coffee?' ' coffee, please.'
7. 'Goodbye! Have a nice holiday.' 'Thanks. you a postcard.'
8. Thank you for lending me your camera.it back to you on Monday, OK?
9. 'Are you coming with us?' 'No, I thinkhere.'

Exercise 128. Read the situations and write sentences with *I think I'll...* or *I don't think I'll...*

1. It's a bit cold. You decide to close the window. You say: ...*I think I'll close the window.*
2. You are feeling tired and it's quite late. You decide to go to bed. You say:
I think
3. A friend of yours offers you a lift in his car but you decide to walk. You say:
Thank you but
4. You arranged to play tennis today. Now you decide that you don't want to play.
You say: *I don't think*
5. You were going to go swimming. Now you decide that you don't want to go.
You say: *I don't think*

Exercise 129. Read the following sentences and translate them into Russian.

1. The door **won't** shut.
2. The video **won't** play properly.
3. The computer **won't** print.
4. The tap **won't** turn off.
5. The car **won't** start.

6. The cork **won't** come out.
7. The window **won't** open.

Exercise 130. Which is correct?

1. 'Did you phone Ruth?' 'Oh no, I forgot. I phone her now. / I'll phone her now.'
(***I'll phone*** is correct)
2. I can't meet you tomorrow afternoon. I'm playing tennis. / I'll play tennis. (***I'm playing*** is correct)
3. 'I meet / I'll meet you outside the hotel in half an hour, OK?' 'Yes, that's fine.'
4. 'I need some money.' 'OK, I'm lending / I'll lend you some. How much do you need?'
5. I'm having / I'll have a party next Saturday. I hope you can come.
6. 'Remember to buy a newspaper when you go out.' 'OK. I don't forget / I won't forget.'
7. What time does your train leave / will your train leave tomorrow?
8. I asked Sue what happened but she doesn't tell / won't tell me.
9. 'Are you doing / Will you do anything tomorrow evening?' 'No, I'm free. Why?'
10. I don't want to go out alone. Do you come / Will you come with me?
11. It's a secret between us. I promise I don't tell / I won't tell anybody.

Exercise 131. Complete the sentences with will ('ll) + one of these verbs:

be be come get like look meet pass

1. Don't worry about your exam. I'm sure you... ***'ll pass***....
2. Why don't you try on this jacket? It nice on you.
3. You must meet George sometime. I think you..... him.
4. It's raining. Don't go out. You wet.
5. They've invited me to their house. They offended if I don't go.
6. Goodbye. I expect we again before long.
7. I've invited Sue to the party but I don't think she
8. I wonder where I 20 years from now.

Exercise 132. Put in will ('ll) or won't.

1. Can you wait for me? I ***won't*** be very long.
2. There's no need to take an umbrella with you. It rain.
3. If you don't eat anything now, you be hungry later.
4. I'm sorry about what happened yesterday. It happen again.
5. I've got some incredible news! You never believe what's happened.
6. Don't ask Margaret for advice. She know what to do.

Exercise 133. Write questions using do you think ... will ... ? + one of these verbs:

be back cost finish get married happen like rain

1. I've bought Mary a present. **Do you think she'll like it?**
2. The weather doesn't look very good. **Do you**
3. The meeting is still going on. **When do you**
4. My car needs to be repaired. **How much**
5. Sally and David are in love. **Do**
6. 'I'm going out now.' 'OK. **What time**'
7. The future situation is uncertain. **What**

Exercise 134. Replace **shall** and **will** with the suggested alternative verb, making any necessary changes:

1. It **will** soon rain. Look at the clouds. (*to be going*)
2. You **shall** stay here till I come back. (*to be to*)
3. I **won't** do what you tell me. (*to refuse*)
4. You **shall** have an apple after dinner. (*to promise*)
5. What **will** you do now? (*to be going*)
6. We **shall** visit all the sights of London. (*to hope*)
7. When **will** you learn English properly? (*to intend*)
8. This time next week I **shall** be in St. Petersburg, (*to hope*)
9. Do you think they'll follow us all the way home? (*to mean*)

Exercise 135. Underline the correct word(s) in bold, as in the example.

1. A: **Can**/**Will** I make anything for the party on Saturday?
B: Yes, please. A pasta salad would be great.
2. A: **What about**/**Shall** we invite the Tildons round for lunch on Sunday?
B: Yes, that's a great idea.
3. A: **Where could**/**shall** I put these books?
B: On the counter, please.
4. A: You look exhausted! I **will**/**may** do the cooking tonight.
B: Thanks so much.
5. A: What do you want to do today?
B: **Why don't we**/**What about** going for a bike ride?
6. A: Oh dear. The car has a flat tyre again.
B: **Would you like me**/**Do you want** to change the tyre for you?

Exercise 136. Read the following sentences and make **offers** or **suggestions**, as in the example.

1. You and your friends want to go away this weekend but you can't decide where to go. You would like to go skiing. What do you say?
...**Let's go skiing...** **Shall we go skiing?**... **We can/could go skiing.** ...
...**Why don't we go skiing?**... **Why shouldn't we go skiing?**... **Why not go skiing?**...

...How/What about going skiing?...

2. Your cousin is going on a business trip tomorrow morning. He is afraid he won't find a taxi and won't get to the airport on time. What do you say?
3. Your sister doesn't know what to study at university. You believe that she would make a great lawyer. What do you say?
4. Your mother is throwing a party (устроить вечеринку) and has a lot of things to do. She can't do them all by herself. What do you say?
5. Your friend has been complaining of headaches. You think her eyes need checking. What do you say?

Exercise 137. Complete these pairs of sentences appropriately using the modal verb given in brackets in one sentence, and its negative form in the other sentence.

1. He certainly ... **won't** ... understand if you don't explain it. (will)
I ... **will** ... come round later if I have time.
2. Unfortunately many elderly people afford telephones. (can)
You borrow my pen if you want to.
3. When I was young you buy them for under a pound. (could)
They complained that they sleep.
4. If you don't work harder, you have your job much longer. (may)
This medicine cause sleepiness.
5. I thought I find you here. (might)
It's a long journey. They be here before midnight.
6. Schools teach children the difference between right and wrong, (must)
Whatever you do you tell anyone about it.
7. I get angry in a moment. (shall)
That was a moment I forget in a hurry.
8. We can't be certain how an unfamiliar word be pronounced. (should)
These birds be in a cage.
9. I be back in a few minutes. (will)
If we're lucky perhaps this time it rain.
10. If you can manage to help me, I be very grateful. (would)
I invited her even though I knew she come.
11. You to wait too long. (ought)
She to see the doctor.

Exercise 138. Rewrite the following sentences to form questions beginning with the modals given.

1. I would like to help you. /Can I ... **help you?** ...
2. I'd like to speak to Nicky please. /Can I ...
3. It would help if you could give me a few examples. / Could you ...
4. I'd like to have a word with you please. /May I ...
5. I wish she wouldn't be so nasty to me. /Why must she ...
6. I don't know what to give them for dinner. /What shall I ...

7. Would you like me to shut the door? /Shall I ...
8. I don't know where to meet you tonight. /Where should ...
9. I don't know who to see about my teaching programme. /Who should ...
10. Doctor, can I offer you a drink? /Will you ...
11. Please tell her that Adrian phoned. /Would you ...

Exercise 139. Translate the following sentences into English using **will**.

1. Сегодня воскресенье, и все магазины будут закрыты. 2. Я заплатил деньги, и я хочу посмотреть представление. 3. Я думаю, что я пойду и посмотрю телевизор, если вы извините меня. 4. «Дядя Эдвин, – позвал мальчик. – Ты обещал мне помочь с моим игрушечным поездом. Он никак не двигается». 5. Ты должен сдерживаться. Я не позволю тебе так вести себя в моем доме. 6. Если вы последуете за мной, я покажу вам дорогу. 7. Отец не допустит, чтобы ты так разговаривал со мной. 8. Не понимаю, почему окно не открывается. 9. Я ни за что не поменяю свою работу. 10. Я прошу ее не курить, а она все равно продолжает курить. 11. Ребенок не слушает родителей. Он будет наказан. 12. Она не говорит, что случилось, просто продолжает плакать. 13. Ты выглядишь усталой. Я приготовлю обед сегодня вечером. 14. Закрой дверь, пожалуйста. 15. Я обещаю, завтра я не опоздаю. 16. Ну, подожди – ты пожалеешь об этом! 17. О, я оставила дверь открытой. Пойду и закрою. 18. После того, что случилось, я не верю ни одному твоему слову. 19. Апельсин никак не чистится. 20. Тебе не понравится это блюдо: оно очень острое.

Exercise 140. Change the following statements of fact into expressions of **certainty** by using **will + infinitive**. Use the *Indefinite Infinitive* when speaking about the present, the *Perfect Infinitive* when speaking about the past.

1. The tall building in the centre **is** the bank. ...*The tall building in the centre **will be** the bank.* ...
2. The blonde in black **was** the secretary. ...*The blonde in black **will have been** the secretary.* ...
3. And this **is** the person in question.
4. This **is** your mother.
5. You **have noticed** it already.
6. She **left** a message for us.
7. Something **was decided**.
8. The man **noticed** you leaving the grounds.
9. It **was** someone the dog knew.
10. That **is** the asylum.

11. Would

Would was originally the past tense of *will* in the same way as *should* was the past tense of *shall*. But while *should* has acquired new shades of meaning, **would** has preserved those of *will* and refers the action to the past.

1. Polite request. We use **would** to make request more polite, or to request things of people we do not know so well.

- . **Would you fill in this form, please, sir?**
- . **Would you mind opening the window? – Yes, I will./ I’m afraid I can’t at the moment.**
- . **Would you mind answering a few questions, please?**
- . **Would you mind if I opened the window?** Вы бы не возражали, если бы я открыл окно.
- . **Do you mind if we don’t discuss it?** Вы не возражаете, если мы не будем обсуждать это.
- . **Would you mind my waiting here?**
- . **Would you mind not smoking?**
- . **Would you mind not talking during the examination, please?**
- . **Would you really do it for me?**
- . **Would you be so kind as to lend me your book?**
- . **Shut the door, would you?**
- **I wonder if you would mind if...** (formal request)
 - . **I wonder if you would mind very much if I went to bed?** Вы не будете возражать, если я пойду спать?

2. Offer. We can use **would** when we **offer** something to another person.

- . **Would you have some more of the pie?** (neutral) – **Yes, please./ No, thank you./ Yes, I’d like one please./ Yes, I’d love some please.**
- . **Would you like me to open the window (for you)?**
- . **Would you like to come to Scotland with me?**
- . **Would you like another drink?**
- . **What would you like to have?**
- . **What would you prefer? What would you rather have?**

3. Invitation, suggestion. We can use **would** in questions with the verbs ‘*to like, to prefer*’ when we *invite* somebody to do something. (*Invitation* with ‘**would**’ is more polite than with ‘**will**’)

- . **Would you like to stay with us?**
- . **Would you like to go shopping?**

4. Past habits and repeated actions but not past states; **persistence** (настойчивость, упорство, непоколебимость), **willingness** (готовность, желание). We use **would** in the affirmative only to refer to *general* or *repeated willingness* in the past.

- When I was a child, I **would go** to see my grandparents every week.
- When I was a child, my father **would** sometimes **take** me fishing. Когда я был ребенком, отец, бывало, иногда брал меня на рыбалку.
- As he grew older, he **would** often **talk** about his war experiences.
- When I was little, I **would dress** up in our mother's old clothes.
- Dad **would** always **help** us with our maths homework.
- She **would** often **hear** him grumbling. Она часто слышала, как он что-то бормотал.
- Each time we went out together, he **would** show me something new.
- We can refer to past habit in the following ways:
 - When I worked on a farm, I **always used to get up** at 5 a.m.
 - When I worked on a farm, I **would always get up** at 5 a.m.
 - When I worked on a farm, I **always got up** at 5 a.m.
- **Would** can be used in place of **used to**, but, like the Simple Past, **would** *always* requires a time reference. We often use **would** to talk about regular activities, particularly in narrative (рассказ; повесть), or when we are reminiscing (предаваться воспоминаниям, вспоминать прошлое). **Would** is never used at the beginning of a story: the scene must first be set with *the Simple Past* or *used to*. In familiar (неформальный) narrative, **would** can be reduced to **'d**:
 - When I was a boy, we always **spent** (or **used to spent**) our holiday on a farm. We'd **get up** at 5 and we'd **help** milk the cows. Then we'd **return** to the farm kitchen, where we **would eat** a huge breakfast.
- We do not use **would** in the affirmative to express *willingness* to do something on a single, particular occasion in the past. Compare:
 - ~~The tour guide was very helpful. She **would contact** the Consulate (консульство) for me when I lost my passport.~~
 - The tour guide was very helpful. She **contacted/offered to contact** the Consulate for me when I lost my passport.
 - Whenever I had to go to town, Ron **would** give me a lift. (= *repeated*)
 - I was late, so Ron **gave** me a lift to town. (*not ...Ron would give me...*) (= *particular occasion*)

5. Unwillingness (нежелание; неохота, нерасположение) OR refusal (отказ, непринятие), volition (воля, хотение).

- Several times he tried to get away, but she **would not let** him go. Несколько раз он пытался уйти, но она ни за что не отпускала его.
- I knocked but they **wouldn't open** the door.
- She was going away and **would not** say where she was going. Она уезжала и не хотела сказать, куда едет.
- I asked him to give up smoking but he **wouldn't**. Я просил его бросить курить, но он не хотел.
- We can use '**would not**' for *refusal* both on *general* or *repeated occasions* and on *a single, particular occasion* in the past.
 - The shop assistant **wouldn't change** this jumper for me, even though I hadn't worn it.

- We thought that people **wouldn't buy** / **would buy** the book. (= *general occasion*)
- She **wouldn't say** / ~~would say~~ what was wrong when I asked. (= *a single occasion*)

6. We use **would/wouldn't to criticize inanimate** (неживой, неодушевленный) **things** describing an annoying (досадный; раздражающий) habit. It is used in speaking about lifeless things in the same way as **will**, but in this use **would** is more common than **will**.

- She was angry because the car **wouldn't start**.
- He had a wound that **wouldn't heal**. У него была рана, которая никак не заживала.

7. In conditional sentences after the conjunction **if**. ('**Would**' after '**if**' with '**will**' or '**would**' in the principal clause produces a more hesitant (колеблющийся; нерешительный, сомневающийся) or a politer effect. A sentence of this type is often a conditional sentence only in form; it is actually **a polite request**.)

- If you **would be** frank with me, I might be of more help.
- If you **would write** to me, I will/would answer it at once.
- If you **would stay** here, I should be very much obliged to you.
- A friendly invitation: We are having a few guests to dinner tomorrow, and should be delighted if you **would join** us. Looking forward to seeing you.
- We should be obliged if you **would kindly inform** us about their financial standing. Мы были бы обязаны, если бы вы любезно сообщили нам об их финансовом положении.
- I should be very grateful if you **would consider** my application and could send me the necessary forms. Я был бы рад, если бы вы рассмотрели мое заявление и послали необходимые бумаги.

8. **Disagreement**. We can use **wouldn't** to show **disagreement** in a polite way.

- I **wouldn't say** that.
- I **wouldn't go** that far.

9. **Desires and preferences**. We often use '**would**' with verbs of 'liking and preference' (**like, love, prefer**) to express **desires and preferences** which we think we can realize.

- I'd like to say a few words about this problem.
- They **would like to know** what time we will be back home.
- We **would like** an English-German dictionary, please?
- I'd prefer to lose weight by a tried (надежный, проверенный) and tested (испытанный) method than by a new trendy (модный) diet.
- **Would you like to dance?** – **Yes, I would./ No, thank you.** ('No, I wouldn't' is not common because it is impolite.)
- **Would you like to come** for a walk with me? – **(Yes,) I'd like to/I'd love to/**

No, I'd prefer not to, thank you.

- **Preference.** We can use '*would*' with '*rather*' or '*sooner*' to express a preference.
 - **We would rather not stay** at the conference centre. (*present or future reference*)
 - **I would rather have stayed** at home. (*past reference*)
 - **I'd rather he gave** me a cash refund. A credit note is no use to me. (= I would prefer a refund/ I wish he would give me a refund.)
- **Careful!** We don't normally use '**I want**' when you are asking for something. It is not polite. In a shop you don't say: '**I want a packet of chewing gum.**' It is better to say: '**Can/Could I have a packet of chewing gum?**' or '**I'd like a packet of chewing gum, please?**'

Exercises

Exercise 141. *Comment on the meaning of would. Translate the sentences into Russian:*

1. Arthur, would you mind seeing if Mrs. Smith has come back? 2. I want a photograph of you, – would you give me one? 3. But I told him I wouldn't give him an answer till tomorrow. 4. You did want to come, although you wouldn't say so. 5. She'd like you to ring her up this afternoon, before five-thirty, if you would. 6. I should be so glad if you would tell him to come up, Jane. 7. I knocked more than once but she wouldn't let me in. 8. He would sit on the bed beside him and watch him for hours. 9. I asked what the matter was with him but he wouldn't answer. 10. He tried the window but it wouldn't give in either. 11. As he grew older, he would often talk about his war experience.

Exercise 142. *Change these questions using would you like to make them into polite offers.*

1. Do you want to watch TV now? → ***Would you like to watch TV now?***
2. Do you want soup with your meal?
3. Do you want to go home now or later?
4. Do you want sugar in your tea?
5. Do you want me to type these letters?
6. Do you want us to help you plan the meeting?
7. Do you want a single or a double room?
8. Do you want me to start work early tomorrow?

Exercise 143. *Rewrites the following sentences as in the example.*

1. You want your friend to have a holiday with you. ...***Would you like to have a holiday with me? ...***
2. You want your friend to go on an excursion with you.

3. You want your friends to join you for a meal.
4. You want to offer your friend a cup of coffee.
5. You want your friend to have a game of chess.
6. You want your friend to go for a swim with you.
7. You want to invite your friend to the theatre.

Exercise 144. Complete the requests using **Would you mind...?** following the model:
(polite request)

Example: I'm hot. (open the window) → *Would you mind opening the window?*

1. It's cold in here. (close the door)
2. I can't concentrate. (turn the music down)
3. I've got a cough. (not smoke)
4. We can't understand you. (not speak French)
5. The manager is busy at the moment. (wait a minute)
6. I'm sorry, Simon's not here now. (leave a message)

Exercise 145. Rewrite these sentences using **wouldn't mind**.

1. I'd quite like to live in London. / **I wouldn't mind ... *living in London.* ...**
2. She said she'd quite like to learn English. / She said she wouldn't mind ...
3. Bill agreed that he would quite like to be chairman. / Bill agreed he wouldn't mind ..
4. We all agreed we'd quite like to go back to work. / We all agreed we wouldn't mind
5. I'd quite like to go into politics. / I wouldn't mind ...
6. We'd quite like to catch an early train. / We wouldn't mind ...

Exercise 146. Replace the words in *italics* with **won't** or **wouldn't**.

1. I asked my father but he **refused** to lend me the money. *I asked my father but he **wouldn't** lend me the money.....*
2. I've asked John to help but he **refuses**.
3. I've decided to take the job and I **refuse** to change my mind.
4. He tried to put his arm around her, but she **didn't** let him.
5. He hates the radio; he **refuses** to listen to it.
6. She switched on the machine but it **refused** to work.
7. He proposed to her but she **refused** to marry him.
8. I pushed hard but the door **refused** to open.
9. Tell him I **refuse** to discuss anything until I've spoken with my colleagues.

Exercise 147. Complete the sentences. (Making Offers and Suggestion).

1. Why don't we rent a video?
Let's
2. Can I help you write the report?

Would?

3. Shall we buy Peter a CD-player for his birthday?

We could

4. Let's go to the beach this weekend.

What about?

5. Would you like me to make sandwiches for your Christmas party?

I could

6. Would you like me to help you carry the bags into the house?

Can

Exercise 148. Translate the sentences into English. (**would, wouldn't**)

1. Я просила, я умоляла (to implore), но он так и не дал мне денег. 2. Я не смог съездить за город в прошлое воскресенье, так как родители ни за что не разрешили взять их машину. 3. Он сказал, что ему придется уехать через несколько дней, но мы и слушать не хотели. 4. Бывало, по дороге домой они заходили (to call at) в кафе. 5. Обычно по вечерам он садился на веранде (verandah) и выкуривал сигару. 6. Сестра ни за что не хотела взять меня на пикник. 7. По воскресеньям она обычно садилась за пианино и пела нам. 8. Друзья старались убедить (to persuade) меня, но я не хотел их слушать.

Exercise 149. Correct the sentences if necessary, or put a ✓.

1. I had to work late on Friday, so my mother ~~would pick~~ up Sue from school.**picked**

2. Mary **wouldn't sing** for me, even though I often asked her to. ...✓

3. The moment I asked Steve, he **would agree** to lend me the car for the day.

4. When I phoned, the receptionist **wouldn't let** me have an appointment with Dr Johnson before next week.

5. At the interview they **wouldn't tell** me how much travelling was involved in the job.

6. Yesterday he **would make** me sandwiches and **would bring** me a cup of coffee.

7. When I had problems with my homework last night, my father **would do** it for me.

8. Five years ago, the children in this school **would help** to plant all the trees you see before you.

9. Before he moved to London, Thomas **would meet** me every day after work.

10. When I was young, shopkeepers **would cycle** around town, delivering food to customers.

Exercise 150. If possible, complete the sentences with either **will** or **would** followed by the bare infinitive form of the verb in brackets. If it is not possible to use **will** or **would**, write only the verb in brackets in the Past Simple.

1. Around 2 o'clock every night, Sue ... **will start**... talking in her sleep. It's very annoying. (*start*)

2. As soon as he woke up he things ready for breakfast. (*get*)
3. He work in 2008 as an assistant to the managing director. (*begin*)
4. After I read about the place in a magazine, Ito visit Madagascar myself. (*want*)
5. When I was younger, I hours just kicking a ball around the garden. (*spend*)
6. Even when it's freezing cold, some people just jeans and a T-shirt. (*wear*)
7. When I was at school, all the children in silence when the teacher came into the room. (*stand up*)
8. Everywhere she went, people her name and ask for her autograph. (*call out*)
9. Jack three days ago from a holiday in France. (*return*)
10. I usually get up late, so most mornings, I just a cup of tea for breakfast. (*have*)
11. There's a boy in my maths class who the most ridiculous questions. (*ask*)
12. She all her closest friends and relatives to her 50th birthday party last summer. (*invite*)

Exercise 151. Complete these sentences with **will**, **would** or **used to**. If more than one answer is possible, write them both.

1. I like going to pop concerts when I was a teenager.
2. Business people watch what their competitors are doing with great interest.
3. The country now known as Myanmar be called Burma.
4. My father didn't know that we borrow the car when he was at work.
5. When I was a child, summers be warmer and winters colder than now.
6. Accidents happen in the home, however safe we try to make them.
7. When the weather was good, we go walking in the hills every weekend.

Exercise 152. Complete the following sentences with **will** or **would**.

1. When we were at the seaside, we**would**.... go bathing every day.
2. She walk to the station when the weather was fine.
3. He's very good. He play with that toy for hours on end.
4. As she grew old, she often talk about her father.
5. Kate is very generous. She lend you money if you need it.
6. When he needed extra money, he work overtime.
7. Mrs. Selby is a real chatterbox. She carry on talking for hours and hours if you give her a chance.
8. When he went out, Jack always take an umbrella with him whether it was raining or not.
9. He always say something which makes me laugh.
10. He slam the door when he comes in.

Exercise 153. Translate the following sentences into English using **would**.

1. Ну, пожалуйста, расскажи мне, что случилось.
2. Джон попытался открыть крышку, но она никак не поддавалась.
3. Я бы все сделал, чтобы помочь ему.

4. Он сказал, что он был бы рад, если бы я согласился приехать и погостить у него несколько дней. 5. Он попытался объяснить, но я не стал его слушать. 6. 'Он не согласился мной'. – 'Естественно'. 7. Он сделал две или три попытки зажечь зажигалку, но она никак не зажигалась. 8. Я спросил его жену, что с ним, но она мне не ответила. 9. Вечера он, в большей степени, проводил за игрой в шахматы. 10. Он выключил лампу, но сон к нему не шел. 11. Я хотел посмотреть только одну картину, но они меня не пустили, так как было поздно. 12. Я предложил ей сходить к доктору, но она и слышать не хотела об этом. 13. Он часто засыпал с книжкой в руках и с очками на носу. 14. После работы он обычно дожидался нас у моста. 15. Он обычно прогуливал собаку перед сном. 16. Не хотите ли вы погулять сегодня вечером? 17. Я просил его не хлопать дверью, а он все продолжал хлопать. 18. Если вы подождете минутку, я схожу и принесу книги. (to fetch)

Exercise 154. *Translate the following sentences into English using 'would rather (sooner)' or 'would like'.*

1. Когда мы сели в машину, он сказал: «Мы могли бы прокатиться сейчас. Здесь недалеко есть одно место, которое я бы хотел тебе показать». 2. Хотите еще стакан сока? 3. Я бы предпочел не говорить тебе того, что я знаю о нем. 4. Мне совсем не хотелось идти на этот вечер. Я бы предпочел остаться дома и поговорить с родителями. 5. Он предпочитал слушать других и не говорить сам. 6. «Я бы лучше совсем не приезжала домой», – сказала она голосом, дрожащим от отчаяния. 7. Она бы предпочла сначала прочесть письмо.

Exercise 155. Use of English. Key Word Transformation. *Study these examples. The second sentence has a similar meaning to the first sentence.*

1. Shall I help you move this piece of furniture?
me Would **you like me to help** you move this piece of furniture?
2. He suggested going out to dinner.
go 'Why **don't we go out** to dinner?' he said.
3. Let's try calling him at his office.
we Shall **we try calling him** at his office?
4. You are allowed to take photographs of the excavations.
can You **can take photographs** of the excavations.
may You **may take photographs** of the excavations.
5. The teacher didn't allow us to use a dictionary during the exam.
may 'You **may not use** a dictionary during the exam,' the teacher said.
cannot 'You **cannot use** a dictionary during the exam,' the teacher said.
6. It wasn't necessary for me to wake up so early, but I did.
have I **needn't have woken up** so early.
7. It wasn't necessary for Kim to work overtime.
need Kim **didn't need to work** overtime.

○ Complete each sentence with **two to five** words, including the word in bold.

1. Let's try making some bread today.
we Shall bread today?
2. The policeman didn't allow us to cross the road until it was safe.
may 'You the road until it is safe,' the policeman said.
3. Shall I do the shopping?
me Would the shopping?
4. Terry suggested having a barbecue.
have 'Why a barbecue?' Terry said.
5. Staff members are allowed to leave their cars in the car park.
may Staff members in the car park.
6. My parents didn't allow me to walk home alone.
cannot 'You home alone,' my parents said.
7. It wasn't necessary for her to call me today, but she did.
have She today.
8. It wasn't necessary for Chris to reserve a table in advance.
need Chris a table in advance.

Exercise 156. Choose the most suitable expression for each situation.

- a) You want to invite someone you have just met to go to the theatre with you.
 - 1) May I go to the theatre?
 - 2) Would you like to come to the theatre?
 - 3) Do you think you should go to the theatre?
- b) You are recommending a new restaurant to a friend.
 - 1) You really must try the new Italian restaurant in Green Street.
 - 2) You had better try the new Italian restaurant in Green Street.
 - 3) You would try the new Italian restaurant in Green Street.
- c) Your boss suggests that you work overtime on Saturday, but you don't want to.
 - 1) You must be joking!
 - 2) It's nice of you to ask, but I refuse.
 - 3) Sorry, but I have something already arranged.
- d) You want to ask the waiter to bring you another drink.
 - 1) I'd like another beer, please.
 - 2) Excuse me, but do you think I could take another beer?
 - 3) You can bring me a beer if you like.
- e) You ask your boss for permission to leave work early.
 - 1) Look out! Do you mind leaving early?
 - 2) Is it all right if I go now?
 - 3) I'm off now, bye!
- f) You want some advice from a friend.
 - 1) What do you think I should do?
 - 2) Tell me what I must do.
 - 3) What could you do if you were me?

- g) You are sitting on a bus and want the person in front of you to shut the window.
- 1) Could you shut the window, please?
 - 2) May I shut the window, please?
 - 3) Do you want to shut the window, please?
- h) You want to know how to get to the station, and you ask a stranger.
- 1) Tell me, where is the station?
 - 2) Do you mind telling me where the station is?
 - 3) Could you tell me the way to the station, please?

Exercise 157. Correct these **offers** and **requests**, or put a ✓.

<i>offers</i>	<i>requests</i>
1 What will you have for the main course?	6 I'd like a pizza and a lemonade, please.
2 Where would you go for a meal?	7 I'll like a sandwich.
3 When would you like me to collect you?	8 I'd like you to look at this essay for me.
4 What will you like to do first?	9 I'll like more information, please.
5 What would you order?	10 She should like you to meet her from school.

Exercise 158. Fill in a modal or a synonymous expression and the appropriate form of the verb in brackets.

1. There's no reply when I ring him. He ...**must have left**...(leave) the office already.
2. Don't give up so easily. You (do) it if you tried a little harder.
3. That's no excuse! You know you (finish) this report by today.
4. He (mention) his plans on the phone last night but I really can't remember.
5. Since she crashed the car, she (walk) to work every day.
6. If you find something valuable, you (take) it to the nearest police station.
7. Passengers (not/walk) across the lines. They should use the footbridge.
8. You (know) better than to tell her all your secrets.
9. You (destroy) the letter as soon as you receive it.
10. You (enter) the building if you have a special pass.
11. Can you help me? I (find out) what time the London train arrives.
12. He looks very annoyed. He (wait) for ages.
13. I (take) the library books back yesterday but I forgot and now I'll have to pay a fine.
14. Increased sales mean that all employees (be given) an extra Christmas bonus.
15. (you/take) grandma to the cinema tonight as I have to go out?
16. When I was at school, we (not/wear) jewellery.
17. You (bring) the map with you so we wouldn't have to ask people the way.
18. These bags look heavy. (I/carry) some of them for you?
19. Don't pretend you don't know that you (have) a valid ticket on the bus.
20. You (ring) me to let me know you'd be late. I was worried.

Exercise 159. Study these examples. The second sentence has a similar meaning to the first sentence.

- | | |
|--|---|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Perhaps he is working now.
He may be working now. • I'm sure he hasn't got the letter yet.
He can't have got the letter yet. • I'm sure she understood.
She must have understood. • Shall I help you do your homework?
Would you like me to help you do your homework? • Was it necessary for you to help her?
Did you need to help her? • It's forbidden to smoke in here.
You mustn't smoke in here.
You aren't allowed to smoke in here. • Would you mind if I used your pen?
May/Might I use your pen? | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • He is likely to buy a sports car.
It is likely that he will buy a sports car.
He'll probably buy a sports car. • It isn't necessary for him to work today.
He doesn't have to work today./He doesn't need to work today./He needn't work today. • It wasn't necessary for them to buy so much food.
They needn't have bought so much food. • It would be a good idea to avoid eating sweets.
You should avoid eating sweets. • Let's try doing this exercise.
Shall we try doing this exercise? |
|--|---|

○ Complete the sentences using the words in **bold**. Use two to five words.

1. Perhaps the bridge collapsed because of the storm.
have The bridge**may/might have collapsed**because of the storm.
2. He'll probably come to the party.
likely Hethe party.
3. You mustn't photograph any of the paintings.
allowed Youany of the paintings.
4. It's forbidden to touch the statues in the museum.
touch You n the museum.
5. I'm sure he didn't cheat in the exam.
cheated Hein the exam.
6. Was it necessary for you to call a doctor?
need Dida doctor?
7. Shall I carry your shopping for you?
me Wouldyour shopping for you?
8. I'm sure Ann didn't do it on purpose.
have Annon purpose.
9. Might I take some photos?
if Wouldsome photos?
10. Let's go and see "The Blob" tonight.
we Shall "The Blob" tonight?
11. It isn't necessary for you to do that exercise
need Youthat exercise.

12. It would be a good idea to eat less high-cholesterol food.
should Youhigh-cholesterol food.
13. It wasn't necessary for him to take a coat but he did.
taken He coat.
14. I'm sure Ann spends all her money on clothes.
spend Annon clothes.
15. Was it necessary for you to say that?
have Didthat?
16. I'm sure he knew what he was doing.
known Hehe was doing.
17. Perhaps she's busy at the moment.
be Sheat the moment.

Exercise 160. Look carefully at each line. Some lines are correct, but some have a word which should not be there. Tick each correct line. If a line has a word which should not be there, write the word in the space.

Putting up a friend

Dear Brenda,	
Thanks for replying so quickly to my last letter.	... ✓....
You must to have been surprised when you received	... to ..
a letter from me. I'm glad you will be able	1)...
to have put me up when I come to London.	2)...
Could you be possibly give me some directions	3)...
for your flat? I'm bound to get lost. Do I	4)...
have to take a taxi from the station, or is it	5)...
near enough to walk? Perhaps if I should buy	6)..
a street map of Birmingham when I am arrive. And	7)...
is it all right if I can bring my little brother, Tim?	8)...
By the way, congratulations on your new job.	9)..
You must not be very happy. Do you think that	10)...
you made the right decision, though? I think	11)...
you should or have gone to university like me.	12)...
I'm sure that you would have been enjoyed it. I	13)...
have done to study a lot, but with any luck I should	14)...
get a good job when I finish. I'd be better post	15)...
this letter now.	

Best Wishes,
 Sheila

12. Dare

1. **Dare** means ‘to have the courage or impertinence to do something (impertinence - дерзость, наглость, нахальство, неуважение), to venture (решиться; осмелиться)’. In the negative it denotes the lack of courage to do something. (**dare** - отваживаться, осмеливаться, сметь)
The verb **dare** as well as **need** has some peculiarities which make it different from other modal verbs.

It is used both as:

a) a **normal verb** (taking the auxiliary *do* in the interrogative and negative forms, -s in the third person singular and the to-Infinitive) and as:

b) an **anomalous verb** (without any auxiliary in its interrogative and negative forms, without -s in the third person singular and without the particle *to* before the infinitive which follows it).

- **Dare** has two forms - **dare** for the present and **dared** for the past.
- Both **dare not** and **dared not** can be used to refer to the past.
- **Dare** is mostly used in negative and interrogative sentences.
- **Dare** is used only with the Indefinite Infinitive.
 - How **dare** you **say** such a thing?
 - How **dared** you **teach** me?
 - How **dare** you **go out** by yourself after the orders I gave you?
 - I **dare not protest**. / I **daren't protest**.
 - **Did** he **dare to strike** me when I was down?
 - He **did not dare to meet** his uncle.
 - She **dare not open/dared not open** her mouth. Она не посмела вымолвить ни слова.
 - She **dare not tell/dared not tell** the truth.
 - I'd like to ask for the day off, but I **daren't/don't dare to**.
 - I wanted to ask for the day off, but I **didn't dare to**.
 - I hardly **dare tell** him what happened. (implied negative)
 - You **dare address** me in that tone! (**dare** can be used in the affirmative, but this is less common)
 - **Do** you **dare to tell** him? – I **don't dare to tell** him.
 - **Dare** you **ask** him? (Are you brave enough to ask him?) I **daren't ask** him.
 - **Dare** you **tell** him? – I **daren't tell** him.
- Sometimes **dare** takes the auxiliary but is followed by the bare infinitive.
 - I **don't dare protest**. Не смею возражать.
 - **Do** you **dare tell** him? – I **don't dare tell** him.

2. **Dare** as a full transitive verb means ‘to challenge’, ‘to defy’. It is used especially by children when challenging each other to do something dangerous. (**dare** = to challenge – бросать вызов к-л, вызывать на ч-л; подзадоривать, провоцировать; to defy - вызывать, бросать вызов)

- I **dare** you **to jump** the stream! Держу пари, вы не перепрыгните через этот ручей!
- I **dare** you **to jump** off that wall! Спорим, что ты не спрыгнешь с этой стены!
- He **dared** me **to sue** him. Он спровоцировал меня подать против него судебный иск.

- I **dare** you **to say** this straight to her face. Попробуй, скажи ей это прямо в лицо.
- I didn't want to do it but he **dared** me (**to**).

3. However, we often come across *I dare say/I daresay* which has become a stock phrase (клише) and acquired a new meaning = '*I suppose*'; '*It is possible*' (*I dare say/I daresay* - я полагаю, думаю, считаю, осмелюсь сказать (иногда иронически))

- I **dare say** you are right. Очень возможно, что вы правы.
- I **daresay** he will come later. Полагаю (пожалуй), он придет позже.
- I **daresay** you'll phone me if you are going to be late tonight.
- I **daresay** you have thought me very neglectful. Я полагаю, вы считаете меня очень небрежным/невнимательным.
- This is supposed to be a cheap restaurant. It says so in this guidebook. – I **daresay** it does, but look at these prices!

Exercises

Exercise 161. Explain the meaning of 'dare' in the following sentences and translate them into Russian.

1. He felt he dare not reply. 2. Her face bore an expression of such ferocity (жестокость, свирепость) that no one dared come near to speak with her. 3. I dare say you're a little tired after your walk, dear. 4. He dared not look into her face. 5. I did not dare to ask him to call off his trip. 6. She was aware that they were too intent (сосредоточены) upon their business to think that anyone was watching them, but she dared not move. 7. Who dares to jump over the stream? 8. She did not dare to leave the house in case he telephoned. 9. He didn't dare lie to his mother. 10. Dare you ask for more money? 11. How dare he speak to you like that? (I wonder at such impudence-наглость, дерзость.)

Exercise 162. Rewrite these sentences using dare or dared.

1. I am not brave enough to speak to him about his daughter.
2. I challenge you to tell the teacher the truth.
3. The boys hadn't the courage to wake the father.
4. How can you be so impudent (нахальный, дерзкий) as to go out by yourself after the orders I gave you.
5. I challenge you to fight him.
6. I haven't the courage to reproach her for it.
7. How could he venture (решиться; осмелиться) to strike me when I was down?
8. I wanted to ask for some time off but I hadn't the courage.

Exercise 163. Translate the following sentences into English.

1. Гарри встретил вчера мистера Грина, но не посмел сказать ему, что мы разбили автомобиль, который взяли у него на время. 2. Не скажете ли вы

мистеру Грину, что мы разбили его автомобиль? У меня не хватает смелости сказать ему об этом. 3. Как вы смеее так говорить со мной? 4. Как он смеет говорить так грубо обо мне? 5. Посмеет ли он признать это? 6. И они смеют говорить, что мы поступили нечестно? 7. Он подстрекал меня перепрыгнуть через ручей. 8. Пусть кто угодно попробует доказать, что мои факты, неправильна (т. е. что мое сообщение неточно).

Reported Speech ■ Modals

Study this chart:

Modals change as follows in Reported Speech.

can → **could** (present reference)
can → **would be able to** (past reference)
may → **might** (possibility)
may → **could** (permission)
must → **had to** (obligation)
must → **must** (logical assumption)
needn't → **didn't need to/didn't have to** (present reference)
needn't → **wouldn't have to** (future reference)
mustn't → **mustn't**
should → **should**

○ **Study these examples:**

- “I may go abroad **this** summer,” Julie said.
Julie said **that she might go abroad that** summer.
- “May I see the manager, please?” Susan asked the shop assistant.
Susan asked the shop assistant **if she could see** the manager.
- “I must pay my electricity bill,” he said.
He said **that he had to pay** his electricity bill.
- “She must be at least twenty-five,” he said to me.
He told me **that she must be at least twenty-five**.
- “You needn't leave **now**,” she said to him.
She told him **that he didn't need to leave/didn't have to leave at that moment**.
- “We needn't wake up early **tomorrow**; it's Sunday,” Greg said.
Greg said **that they wouldn't have to wake up early the next day** as it was Sunday.
- “M. Rollands can dance and sing very well,” the film director said.
The film director said **that M. Rollands could dance and sing** very well.
- “I think we can visit Uncle Louis **tomorrow**,” Father said to us.
Father told us **that we would be able to visit** Uncle Louis **the next day**.
- “You mustn't tell lies,” Mother said to us.
Mother said **that we mustn't tell lies**.

- “All of you should be more careful!” the teacher said.
The teacher said **that we should all be** more careful.

Exercise 164. Complete the sentences using the words in bold. Use **two to five** words.

1. “I must feed the cat before I leave.” Terry said.
to Terry said that he the cat before he left.
2. “Nancy needn’t type any more letters today,” Bob said.
would Bob said that Nancy any more letters that day.
3. “Jordan can tell us about the expedition,” Mary said.
said Mary us about the expedition.
4. “You needn’t waste any more time on this matter,” John said to Helen.
have John said that waste any more time on that matter.
5. “They may decide to have a party this month,” she said to me.
told She decide to have a party that month.
6. “The children can go to the zoo this weekend,” Dad said.
able Dad said that the children to the zoo that weekend.
7. “May I go out for a minute, sir?” Doug asked the teacher.
if Doug asked the teacher for a minute.
8. “You needn’t prepare so much food for tomorrow,” Fiona said to me.
have Fiona said that I so much food for the next day.
9. “She must be very efficient,” said the boss.
said The boss very efficient.
10. “We can cancel tomorrow’s meeting if you have got something urgent to do,” Alice said to her boss.
be Alice said that they the next day’s meeting if her boss had got something urgent to do.

Revision

Exercise 165. *Modal verbs. Ability (can/be able to). Mild and strong obligation (have to/should/must).*

1. There was a woman with a big hat in front of me. I see anything.
A. couldn't B. wasn't able to C. can't
2. Students attend gym classes if they don't want to.
A. don't have to B. mustn't C. shouldn't
3. I'm sorry, you're in my light, I see what I'm doing.
A. couldn't B. 'm not able to C. can't
4. He dial the number although he was going to faint.
A. could B. was able to C. couldn't
5. I think I visit you only next month.
A. have to B. 'm able to C. 'll be able to
6. The car has broken down so I'm afraid we walk.
A. must B. have to C. can
7. Put your hands up if you hear me.
A. can B. 'll be able to C. are able to
8. Iwalk until I was three years old.
A. wasn't able to B. couldn't C. could
9. They walk 10 miles although it rained hard.
A. were able to B. could C. weren't able to
10. My cough is terrible. I stop smoking.
A. must B. should C. have to
11. Don't you think you visit your grandmother in hospital?
A. have to B. should C. need to
12. According to our rules, you run around making so much noise.
A. mustn't B. shouldn't C. don't have to
13. That sign means you park here. Try the next street.
A. mustn't B. shouldn't C. don't have to
14. I wear glasses since my childhood.
A. have to B. have had to C. must
15. If you hadn't been so late, wehim.
A. could meet B. were able to meet C. could have met
16. I can sleep late tomorrow because I go to work.
A. don't have to B. mustn't C. shouldn't
17. She a famous dancer but she had broken her leg in childhood.
A. was able to become B. could become C. could have become
18. You water this plant every day or it will die.
A. mustn't B. don't have to C. shouldn't
19. What do to get a driving license?
A. do people have to B. must people C. have people
20. I'm not particularly busy. I type this text for you in an hour.

A. can

B. am able to

C. 'll have to

Exercise 166. Modal verbs: deduction ('must be/can't be'); obligation ('have to/must'); 'didn't need to' and 'needn't have done'.

1. The film starts at 10 o'clock and you. late, because you have our tickets.
A. can't be B. mustn't be C. don't need to be
2. I a meal last night because we went out and the food was uneaten.
A. needn't have cooked B. didn't have to cook C. mustn't cook
3. You baked a lot of cakes. I think you us.
A. must have been expecting B. have to be expecting C. must expect
4. Something to him. He promised to be here two hours ago.
A. must happen B. must have happened C. had to happen
5. They be hungry. They haven't eaten since morning.
A. must B. have to C. had to
6. I called you yesterday, but you didn't answer. You
A. had to sleep B. must be sleeping C. must have been sleeping
7. – Where is she now? – She her final exam.
A. has to take B. must be taking C. must have been taking
8. Don't panic! We miss our plane, we have plenty of time.
A. mustn't B. can't C. don't have to
9. I the washing because I knew they had already washed everything.
A. mustn't do B. didn't need to do C. needn't have done
10. Your handwriting clear otherwise it is not possible to read your papers.
A. must be B. can be C. must have been
11. The alarm clock went off and I
A. must get up B. must have got up C. had to get up
12. He thought he had lost the key and he kicked the door down. He it because the key was in his pocket.
A. mustn't do B. didn't need to do C. needn't have done
13. Someone is calling. It Ann, she's having a lecture now.
A. mustn't be B. can't be C. doesn't have to be
14. We had enough foreign currency left, so I any more.
A. mustn't buy B. didn't need to buy C. needn't have bought
15. We late for the train or we'll miss the meeting.
A. mustn't be B. can't be C. mustn't have been
16. I be very careful not to upset him.
A. can B. must C. need to
17. I enjoy parties unless I make speeches.
A. don't have B. should C. have to
18. Bill has just left the Army. He wear a uniform.
A. doesn't need to B. mustn't C. oughtn't to
19. The doctor says that I get out of bed.
A. mustn't B. don't have to C. need not to
20. There is nobody in. They shopping.

A. should have gone

B. must have gone

C. ought to have done

Exercise 167. Rewrite these suggestions to make them more direct. (suggestion)

1. I always use a word processor. /You should ... ***always use a word processor.*** ...
2. Most people try to get there a bit earlier. / Couldn't you ...
3. My mother borrowed the money from the bank. / Couldn't you ...
4. My father always gets the information from the local library. / You could ...
5. A lot of people take a later train. / Why not ...

Exercise 168. Rewrite these suggestions starting with the words given. (suggestion)

1. Let's go to the theatre. / How about ... ***going to the theatre?*** ...
2. We should get started as soon as possible. / It might be a good idea ...
3. You could write and ask her yourself. / You might like to ...
4. Why don't we take a winter holiday for a change? / What about ...
5. Couldn't you just pay at the end of the month? / You could ...
6. We could take a week off in July. / Let's ...
7. You could ask Bill to help. / What ...
8. Why don't you ring and tell them you're coming? / You ...
9. We could borrow the equipment from Peter. / Couldn't ...
10. Why don't we keep quiet about that? / It might ...

Exercise 169. Find the word which should not be in the sentence.

- 1 You shouldn't ***to*** have told him that. ... ***to*** ...
- 2 Would you have mind helping me with this?
- 3 We were been able to book a hotel room through a travel agency.
- 4 Can you please to pass the salt?
- 5 He might have had left his wallet at home.
- 6 You are not allowed it to enter that part of the building.
- 7 Sonia should be know about his refusal to co-operate.
- 8 They needn't to have spent so much money redecorating their house.
- 9 He may be is waiting for the bus.
- 10 Mr. Beaumont is to will arrive at 9.00 a.m. tomorrow.
- 11 Ellen is likely that to return sooner than expected.
- 12 How about we calling him to find out if he has been invited too?
- 13 That can't to have been Richard Gere!
- 14 You should to go now.
- 15 Might does he still be waiting for us?
- 16 She will has to make an appointment to see the doctor.
- 17 He has had got to borrow money twice already this month.
- 18 You mustn't to let anyone know about our agreement.
- 19 She may have had given you the wrong address.

20 Would you mind if my asking you a personal question?

Exercise 170. Choose the most appropriate meaning for each sentence.

1. You mustn't lose heart.
 - a. Don't have an operation.
 - b. Don't give up hope.
2. Where's my glass?
 - a. I need a drink.
 - b. I can't see.
3. All goods must be paid for in advance.
 - a. Nothing enjoyable in life is free.
 - b. You have to pay for these things first.
4. This hotel has class.
 - a. You can study hotel management here.
 - b. It is a good quality hotel.
5. I don't have the means to help you.
 - a. I'm not able to help.
 - b. I can't understand what help you need.
6. I'd like some china.
 - a. I want to go abroad.
 - b. I need some cups and plates.

Exercise 171. Choose the sentence closest in meaning to the sentence given.

1. It's possible that we'll know the answers tomorrow.
 - a) We may know all the answers tomorrow.
 - b) We should know all the answers tomorrow.
2. I don't think you should ring him now. It's rather late.
 - a) You might not ring him now. It's rather late.
 - b) You'd better not ring him now. It's rather late.
3. You needn't come if you don't want to.
 - a) You won't come if you don't want to.
 - b) You don't have to come if you don't want to.
4. I think it's wrong for you to work so hard.
 - a) You don't have to work so hard.
 - b) You shouldn't work so hard.
5. Perhaps these are the keys.
 - a) These might be the keys.
 - b) These must be the keys.
6. I know. Why don't we go out to eat instead.
 - a) I know. We must go out to eat instead.
 - b) I know. We could go out to eat instead.
7. It would be quite wrong for us to lock the cat in the house for a week.

- a) We'd better not lock the cat in the house for a week,
- b) We can't lock the cat in the house for a week.
- 8. It's possible that the decision will be announced next week.
 - a) The decision might be announced next week.
 - b) The decision will be announced next week.
- 9. Although I try hard, I can never solve *The Times* crossword.
 - a) Try as I may, I can never solve *The Times* crossword.
 - b) Try as I can, I may never solve *The Times* crossword.

Exercise 172. Choose the most suitable word or phrase underlined.

- a) We can't be lost. It isn't allowed/I don't believe it.
- b) Jane is bound to be late. She always is/She must be.
- c) Late-comers are to report to the main office. It's a good idea/It's the rule.
- d) You don't have to stay unless it's necessary/if you don't want to.
- e) Astronauts must feel afraid sometimes. They're supposed to/It's only natural.
- f) You can't come in here. It isn't allowed/I don't believe it.
- g) All motorcyclists have to wear crash helmets. It's a good idea/It's the rule.
- h) I ought not to tell Jack. It's not a good idea/It's the rule.
- i) We should be there soon. I expect so/It's absolutely certain.
- j) You'd better leave now. That's my advice/That's an order!

Exercise 173. Choose the most suitable words underlined.

- a) That can't have been/shouldn't have been Nick that you saw.... **can't have been** ...
- b) You had to give/might have given me a hand!
- c) I caught a later train because I had to see/must have seen a client.
- d) I suppose Bill should have lost/might have lost his way.
- e) I didn't refuse the cake, as it must have been/would have been rude.
- f) I don't know who rang, but it could have been/must have been Jim.
- g) It was odd that you should have bought/would have bought the same car.
- h) I asked them to leave but they couldn't go/wouldn't go.
- i) It's a pity you didn't ask because I could help/could have helped you.
- j) It's your own fault, you can't have gone/shouldn't have gone to bed so late.

Exercise 174. Translate the following sentences into English. (**can, could, may, might, to be allowed to**)

1. Можно пойти поиграть на улице? – Нет, нельзя. 2. Неужели эта работа была сделана в такой короткий срок? 3. Можно мне воспользоваться твоим велосипедом? – Да, ты можешь взять мой велосипед. 4. Не может быть, чтобы он передвинул это пианино сам. 5. Возможно, в чайнике оставалось еще немного чая. 6. Не может быть, чтобы она уехала отсюда по суше. 7. Если бы мы поехали по другой дороге, мы, возможно, приехали бы раньше. 8. Ваш друг мог бы еще прийти, но я не уверен, что он придет. 9. Ты бы мог уделять больше

внимания своим занятиям. 10. Ты мог бы поехать навестить свою сестру, когда у нее были неприятности. 11. Думаешь, самолет прилетит вовремя? – Возможно, он задержится. 12. Цветы бывают очень дорогими. 13. Интересно, где же Том. – Он может быть в библиотеке. 14. Неужели они нас ждут? (Могут они нас ждать?) 15. Когда ты можешь приехать? 16. Возможно, этого не произойдет. 17. Невозможно, чтобы это произошло. 18. К следующему понедельнику я, возможно, закончу эту работу. 19. Можно сейчас увидеть шефа? – Да. – Он сказал, что я могу взять его книгу. 20. Почему он расстроен? Может быть, потому, что он потерял свою сумку. 21. Возможно, он ждет нас на станции. 22. Думаешь, самолет прилетит вовремя? – Возможно, он задержится. 23. Людям было разрешено заниматься мелким и средним бизнесом. 24. Когда ты можешь приехать? 25. Помочь тебе с подготовкой еды? 26. Ты можешь взять эту книгу, если хочешь. 27. Могу я поговорить с Мери?

Exercise 175. Tick the correct sentence, as in the example.

1. a) You can't have called a taxi. I would have driven you to the station.
b) You needn't have called a taxi. I would have driven you to the station. ...✓...
2. a) Robert can't be very talented. He plays the piano, the violin and the flute.
b) Robert must be very talented. He plays the piano, the violin and the flute.
3. a) If Jane sings well in the competition, she might win a prize.
b) If Jane sings well in the competition, she couldn't win a prize.
4. a) You must go to the bank. I can lend you some money.
b) You don't need to go to the bank. I can lend you some money.
5. a) Terry looks tired. He must have been studying all night
b) Terry looks tired. He mustn't have been studying all night
6. a) Sarah needn't be away on holiday. I saw her in the shop this morning
b) Sarah can't be away on holiday. I saw her in the shop this morning
7. a) We didn't need to catch the early train so we woke up late.
b) We needn't have caught the early train so we woke up late.
8. a) I would love to come with you, but I could finish my report
b) I would love to come with you, but I have to finish my report
9. a) You couldn't drive a car without a driving licence.
b) You mustn't drive a car without a driving licence.
10. a) You must be on the platform by 10 o'clock or the train will leave without you.
b) You could be on the platform by 10 o'clock or the train will leave without you.

Exercise 176. Underline the correct item.

1. a. **Mustn't/Must** I eat all my broccoli?
b) Yes. It's very good for you.
2. a) **Must/Could** I do the washing-up now?
b) Yes, because I want to make a cake afterwards.
3. a) I saw a suspicious man in our street yesterday, but I didn't call the police.
b) You **ought to/need** have called them immediately.

4. a) The beach **can/could** get very crowded tomorrow as it's a holiday.
b) Shall we go somewhere else instead?
5. a) You **mustn't/can** wear high heels while you're on the boat.
b) Alright. I'll take them off.
6. a) Where's Bill?
b) Well, it's half past six. He **needn't/must** be at home by now.
7. a) I've done all the ironing for you.
b) You **needn't have done/mustn't do** that, but thanks anyway.
8. a) Oh dear. The car seat is wet.
b) Well, you **shouldn't have left/didn't need to leave** the car window open.
9. a) Dad, can we go swimming?
b) Not yet. You **mustn't/needn't** swim when you have just eaten.
10. a) I photocopied some recipes from my cook book for you.
b) Oh, Carmen! You **couldn't have/needn't have!** I went out and bought the book this morning.
11. a) Liz crossed the road without looking.
b) I know. She **might/may** have been hit by a car. She was lucky that she wasn't.
12. a) I'm so angry. I just got a speeding ticket.
b) Didn't you know that you **needn't/mustn't** drive over 35mph through the city centre?

Exercise 177. *There are nine more mistakes in this text connected with **shall, shan't, will, won't, would, wouldn't**. Underline the mistakes and correct them.*

1 I'll never forget the day my life changed. It was a normal day - in those days I
 2 **shall** do my homework after school so that I could go and listen to pop ...**would**...
 3 music at Janice's after dinner. So I was sitting in front of the fire, trying to keep
 4 warm. Mum was ironing. I looked at the clock.
 5 'Dad's late,' I remarked to Mum.
 6 'It's Thursday. He'd be visiting Granny.'
 7 My grandmother lived in a cold, draughty cottage on the moors. Mum and
 8 Dad wanted her to move in with us, but our house was very small, and she won't. ...
 9 They knew that the cold winter months would have hastened her death - she
 10 already suffered from chronic bronchitis - but she was a stubborn old woman
 11 who will insist on her independence.
 12 'Won't it be nice if we had some money? We could buy a big house and
 13 Granny could have a flat of her own in it. I hate being poor.'
 14 'Oh, pet, I shan't say we're poor. We're not as well off as some, but we've
 15 got a roof over our heads and food in our bellies.' Mum would always see
 16 the best in every situation. It really annoyed me! 'Will I make a nice cup of tea?
 17 Your Dad would be frozen when he gets in. He'll want to save the bus fare so
 18 I'm sure he's walked all the way from your grandmother's.'
 19 At that moment, the door opened and Dad walked in, waving a slip of paper.
 20 Forget the tea, Mary. We're going out tonight. First prize in the lottery.
 21 We're rich!'

Exercise 178. Translate the following sentences from Russian into English: (Modal Verbs).

1. Я никогда не мог понять Питера. 2. Ты не должна включать телевизор, когда он занят. 3. Посмотри, на улице сыро. Должно быть, всю ночь шел дождь. 4. Петров не пришел на занятия сегодня. Он, должно быть, заболел. 5. Вам придется согласиться со мной. 6. Он сказал, что мне тоже следовало принять участие в работе клуба. 7. Вам не было необходимости ехать на вокзал, чтобы купить билеты. Вы могли бы заказать их по телефону. 8. Ты мог бы сказать мне об этом раньше. Если бы я знал, что он не хочет меня видеть, я бы ему не звонил. 9. Он должен был прочитать эту книгу, чтобы быть готовым отвечать на вопросы. Его ответы были великолепны. 10. Ручка никак не пишет. 11. Ключ никак не поворачивается. 12. Вы должны были предупредить его, и он не попал бы в беду. 13. Он должен был приехать на прошлой неделе, но не смог. 14. Он должен был написать этот рассказ из-за денег. Он был занят целую неделю и справился с работой. Если бы у него тогда были деньги, ему не пришлось бы так много работать.

Exercise 179. Supply the necessary modal verbs for the following sentences, noticing carefully the Russian equivalents given in brackets.

1. He ... not and ... not believe her. (*не мог; не хотел*)
2. He sat, thinking unhappily of his talk with Jimmy. He wondered if he ... have stayed with him. He felt he ... have said something at least, to warn Jimmy against Smith. But what ... he have said? And Jimmy ... not have listened. (*надо было бы; следовало бы; мог бы; не стал бы*)
3. "By the way," I asked, "what's Bill doing now?" "How in the world ... I know?" Arthur looked tired. "I thought he ... have been bothering you for money." (*откуда мне знать; может быть*)
4. He came out of the water, smiling. "You ... have come earlier," he said. "We ... have swum together. The water is great." (*зря не пришел; могли бы*)
5. "Last night, you know, Hugh suddenly began to speak to me about what my future was going to be like." "What ... it have meant?" "How ... I know?" (*и что это могло значить; откуда мне знать*)
6. There was an old apple tree beside the path. I said, "I bet I ... climb that." "No, you ... not," said Jack. (*могу; не надо*)
7. "Well, then, ... you hold the line while I find the letter?" "I ... not, I'm in a telephone box." "Then ...I ring you back?" "I'm not on the telephone." "Then I think perhaps you ... ring me back in half an hour. By then I ... have some idea what this is all about." (*можешь ли; не могу; можно мне; тебе лучше; может быть*)
8. He knows he ... read classics. He ... change to something else. (*нет нужды; мог бы*)

9. "Monday will be my last day in London," Hudson said. "I ... stay down here fairly late." (*может быть придется*)
10. In any case, I ... not hang about outside indefinitely while the sisters finished their quarrel. They ... continue for hours. (*не мог же; может быть*)
11. It's too bad she ... not have a drink with us. We ... have learned a great deal about the theatre tonight. (*не могла; могли бы*)
12. If you help me now, I ... help you later. (*может быть смогу*)
13. "I shall wait to hear what Lily has to say about it." "You ... wait a long time." (*может быть придется*)
14. I think you ... certainly have told us the truth, and we ... have decided what was the best thing to do. (*следовало бы; могли бы*)
15. If your mother calls, tell her I ... be a little late. (*возможно придется*)
16. On Saturday Charles broke the news to his father. Mr. March began to grumble: "You ... have chosen a more suitable time to tell me. You ... have known that hearing this would put me out of step for the day." (*следовало бы; мог бы*)

Exercise 180. Translate into English. (**must; to have to; to be to**)

1. Спектакль должен был начаться в шесть часов, но его пришлось отложить, так как один актер заболел. 2. Мне надо было (пришлось) остаться дома вчера, так как у меня было очень много работы. 3. Вы должны вставать рано каждый день? 4. Мы договорили встретиться в театре. Он должен был приехать к половине восьмого и ждать меня у входа. 5. Он вчера был дома, так как ему не нужно было идти в институт. 6. Я вернулся домой раньше обычного, так как мои друзья должны были зайти ко мне в семь часов. 7. Я должен был закончить эту работу вчера, но не смог этого сделать. Мне придётся закончить сегодня. 8. В котором часу вы должны быть в институте завтра? 9. Вам долго пришлось ждать его? – Мне пришлось ждать его недолго. 10. Директор ещё не пришёл. Он должен быть здесь в 11 часов. Вам придётся подождать немного. 10. Ей пришлось перепечатывать письмо несколько раз. Она, должно быть, устала и сделала много ошибок. 11. Вы бледны, вы, вероятно, устали. 12. Выхода не было, и ему пришлось заплатить штраф.

Exercise 181. Translate the following sentences into English using 'can', 'may', 'must', 'have to', 'be to', 'ought to' or 'should'.

1. Тебе надо было бы еще раз прочитать свое сочинение. Там, должно быть, есть ошибки. 2. Неужели сейчас только шесть часов? 3. Зря ты так разговаривал с ним. Он мог обидеться. 4. Уж он-то должен это знать. 5. Он, должно быть, не сказал им ничего, и они, возможно, укладывают вещи. 6. У него, должно быть, есть чувство юмора. Иначе он не мог бы так сказать. 7. Завтра день рождения твоей сестры. Я думаю, что ты должен подарить ей что-нибудь. 8. Должно быть, идет сильный дождь. На улице никого нет. 9. Не может быть, чтобы он забыл о своем обещании. 10. Напрасно ты не послал им телеграмму. Теперь они могли бы уже приехать. 11. Простите, что я опоздал. Вам долго пришлось ждать

меня? 12. Я никуда не выходил в тот вечер, так как после работы ко мне должен был зайти Джордж. 13. Он должен был вернуться в гостиницу, так как вылет его самолета задерживался. 14. Он знал, что ему предстояло быть на двух совещаниях на следующей неделе. 15. Она ничего не должна знать о твоих делах. 16. Она, должно быть, ничего не знает о его делах. 17. Этот экзамен я должен буду сдавать через неделю. 18. Тебе надо будет еще раз позвонить им? 19. Тебе не надо идти сегодня в магазин, так как мы обедаем в гостях. 20. О чем они разговаривают? – Они, может быть, спорят о сценарии. 21. Новость может напугать ее. 22. Она знала, что должна все объяснить им. 23. Тебе надо самому зарабатывать на жизнь. 24. Их дом должны были снести, и ему пришлось переехать в. новый жилой район. 25. Я надеюсь, твоей жене не приходится убирать этот огромный дом. 26. Погода хорошая, и мы могли бы прокатиться за город. 27. Мне очень жаль, но я должен идти. Я должен встретить Бетти у кино. Уже без четверти семь! Она, должно быть, уже ждет меня. Мне придется сесть на автобус. 28. Не мог бы ты сделать это сегодня? 29. Мне можно идти? 30. Зачем мне идти туда пешком? 31. Уже поздно. Где же может быть Дик? - Мне совершенно безразлично. 32. Тебе надо навестить брата в больнице. 33. Его можно было принять за старого человека. 34. Тебе не следует винить его за это. Это частично также и твоя вина. 35. Ты мог бы сказать нам, что происходит. 36. Они уже, возможно, сделали свой выбор. 37. Я не знаю, почему это она не хочет поговорить с ними сама. 38. Удивительно, что они включили его в команду. 39. Вам следовало бы найти специалиста, который бы справился с этой задачей. 40. Отец говорит, что я должен остаться с ним еще немного.

Exercise 182. Read this article from a popular psychology magazine. Discuss it. (Obligation and desirability in the Past: **should have, ought to have, could have, might have**)

*For all sad words of tongue and pen
The saddest are these: "It might have been."
John Greenleaf Whittier*

Not only the saddest, but perhaps the most destructive. According to recent ideas in psychology, our feelings are mainly the result of the way we *think* about reality, not reality itself. Take *Paul*, for example. Talented in school, he decided not to go on to college. Here's what *Paul* thinks about this decision now:

I ought to have applied to college.

I could have become a doctor.

My parents **might have encouraged** me more.

I shouldn't have missed that opportunity.

I could have been rich and famous by now.

According to *Nathan S. Kline, M.D.*, it's not unusual to feel deep regret about things in the past that you think you **should have done** and did not do – or the opposite, about things you did do and feel **you should not have done**. In fact, we learn by thinking about past errors. However, dwelling too much on past mistakes and missed opportunities can create such bad feelings that people become paralyzed and

can't move on with their lives. *Arthur Freeman*, Ph.D. and *Rose DeWolf* have labelled this process "woulda/coulda/shoulda thinking," and they have written an entire book about this type of disorder.

In *Woulda/Coulda/Shoulda: Overcoming Regrets, Mistakes, and Missed Opportunities* (New York: William Morrow, 1989), *Freeman and DeWolf* suggest challenging regrets with specifics. "Instead of saying, '**I should have done better**,'" they suggest, "write down an example of a way in which you **might have done** better. Exactly what **should you have done** to produce the desired result? Did you have the skills, money, experience, etc., at the time?"

When people examine their feelings of regret about the past, they often find that many of them are simply not based in fact. A mother regrets missing a football game in which her son's leg was injured. She blames herself and the officials. "**I should have gone**," she laments. "**I could have prevented** the injury. They **might** at least **have telephoned** me as soon as it happened." Did she really have the power to prevent her son's injury? **Should** the officials **have called** her before they had looked at the injury? Probably not.

Once people realise how unrealistic their feelings of regret are, they are more ready to let go of them. Cognitive psychologist *David Burns*, M.D., suggests specific strategies for dealing with useless feelings of regret and getting on with the present. One amusing technique is to spend ten minutes a day writing down all the things you regret. Then say them all aloud (better yet, record them), and listen to yourself. Here's a typical session:

I shouldn't have told that joke in the office. My career is ruined.

I ought to have cleaned the house instead of going out this weekend. My mother's right. I'm just lazy.

My boyfriend **could have told** me he was going out of town this weekend. He's an inconsiderate jerk. **I should** never **have started** going out with him.

Once you listen to your own "woulda/coulda/shoulda" thoughts, it's easier to see their illogic. For example, it's unlikely that your entire career is in ruins because of one joke. You're an adult and you can choose to go out instead of cleaning house. That doesn't make you a lazy person. Nor is your boyfriend a jerk for making a single mistake.

After you recognize how foolish most feelings of regret sound, the next step is to let go of them and to start dealing with life in the present. For some, this might be harder than sighing over past errors. An Italian proverb notes, "When the ship has sunk, everyone knows how she **could have been saved**." The message from cognitive psychology is similar. It's easy to speculate about the past; the real challenge is to solve the problems you face right now

Exercise 183. *Translate the following sentences into English using suitable modal verbs.*

1. Мне пойти и узнать, сделал ли он работу? Он должен был закончить ее вчера.
2. Тебе долго пришлось дожидаться его? 3. Зря ты пришел. Собрание отменено.
4. Он должен был все закончить вчера, но его неожиданно вызвали в Лондон. 5.

Ты должен был бы сказать нам об этом, а то теперь мы не знаем, что нам делать. 6. Все устроилось. Теперь мне не надо ехать в Лондон. 7. Он, должно быть, не сумел передать им нашу записку, и они, возможно, ждут нас. 8. Неужели он позабыл заказать нам номера в гостинице? – Он, наверное, заказал их на ваше имя. 9. Не может быть, чтобы она сделала такую глупость. 10. Мне можно идти? 11. Вы могли бы сделать это для меня? 12. Он должен был приехать пятичасовым поездом. Неужели он опоздал на него? – Откуда мне знать? 13. Он, наверное, не сказал им об этом, и они, возможно, не придут. 14. Ты должен был нам сказать, что не сможешь выступить за команду сегодня. 15. Зачем тебе откладывать на завтра то, что ты можешь (мог бы) сделать сегодня? 16. Я должна с ним увидеться во вторник вечером. 17. Он мог бы хоть что-нибудь сказать в мою пользу. 18. Она никак не хотела объяснить, в чем дело. 19. К сожалению, мне не пришлось поговорить с отцом. Я не застал его дома. Мне следовало бы приехать рано утром. 20. Ты мог бы мне сказать, что опоздаешь. 21. Она, должно быть, не поняла, по какой дороге ей идти, и, возможно, она заблудилась. 22. Тебе пришлось остаться там до конца, да? 23. Ты вся промокла. Зря ты не попросила кого-нибудь подвезти тебя. 24. Мне, возможно, придется поехать туда на такси. Так, наверное, будет быстрее. 25. Я везде искал его вчера. Я хотел, чтобы он тоже выступил на собрании. – Ты зря беспокоился. Он мог бы все испортить. 26. Вчера мне не пришлось проверить тетради своих студентов, так как мне пришлось заменять другого преподавателя. 27. Мне незачем говорить вам, почему это надо сделать, не привлекая ничьего внимания. 28. Ты напрасно ходил за ключом. Дверь была открыта. 29. Вчера вечером я видел его жену. Ее можно было принять за француженку. 30. Как ты думаешь, почему это он так смутился? 31. Тебе следует захватить плащ. Может пойти дождь. 32. Земля сырая. Здесь, должно быть, только что шел дождь. 33. Вам незачем было приходить. Мы могли бы закончить это без вас. 34. Вечером она должна была пойти на вечеринку. Поэтому после завтрака ей пришлось вымыть голову. 35. Странно, что он ушел, не сказав нам, куда он пошел. 36. Я не вижу, почему бы вам не быть друзьями. 37. Осторожно. Вы чуть не упали. 38. Тебе не надо было звонить ей так поздно. 3. Это – несущественный пункт. Его можно было и не включать в отчет. 40. Он сказал, что должен спешить, и ушел, не дождавшись, чтобы она что-нибудь ответила. 41. Вам не нужно приходить завтра. Я буду занят.

Exercise 184. Modals. Choose the correct item.

1. You mad if you think I'm going to lend you any more money.
A. should be B. are supposed to be C. must be D. ought to be
2. I happy to see him, but I didn't have time.
A. will have been B. would be C. will be D. would have been
3. We Switzerland four times during the 1970s.
A. used to visit B. would visit C. visited D. will visit
4. 'Why isn't Tim here yet?' 'It ... be because his mother is ill again.'
A. may B. can C. might D. could

5. If I hadn't come along at that moment, Jim the one arrested instead of the real thief.
 A. might have been B. may have been C. can have been D. could have been
6. Jenny leave the hospital only six hours after the baby was born.
 A. was able to B. could C. can D. is able to
7. The car broke down and we a taxi.
 A. must have got B. had got to get C. had to get D. must get
8. You whisper. Nobody can hear us.
 A. needn't B. don't have to C. mustn't D. need to
9. Although he didn't have a ticket, Ken come in.
 A. could B. can C. might D. was allowed to

Exercise 185. Which one of the verbs given can complete all three sentences in each set?

1 used to/ will/ would

- a. Most days my father get up first and make breakfast.
 b. When I was training for the marathon, Irun over 100 kilometres a week.
 c. We went back to Dublin to see the house where welive in the 1960s.

2 should/ ought to/ must

- a. Students be encouraged to type their assignments.
 b. 'Whose car is that outside Bill's house?' 'It belong to Bill's sister. I heard that she's staying with him this weekend.'
 c. You have some of this cake. It's brilliant!

3 needn 't/mustn 't/ don't have to

- a. I'll be quite late getting to London, but you change your plans for me.
 b. I'm afraid I owe quite a lot of money to the bank - but you worry about it.
 c. Next time, read the small print in the document before you sign it. You make the same mistake again.

4 must / need to / have to

- a. People with fair skins be particularly careful when they go out in the sun.
 b. The Browns have won the lottery – they've bought another new car!
 c. We give at least six months' notice if we want to leave the house.

5 may / could/ might

- a. Ray told me that someone had bought the old house next door he be right about that, I wondered.
 b. The major changes to the timetable cause delay and confusion.
 c. I asked in the bookshop about Will Dutton/s latest book, but all they tell.....me was that it would be published before the end of the year.

6 can/ could/ is (or was) able to

- a. Val had always wanted to go scuba diving and do so last summer.
 b. I hope Jim help you tomorrow.
 c. She played the piano quite well even before she read music.

Exercise 186. Study these examples:

1. It would be a good idea to quit smoking. → **You should quit smoking.**
2. Shall I help you with the washing-up? →
Would you like me to help you with the washing-up?
3. It's forbidden to feed the animals in the zoo. →
You mustn't feed the animals in the zoo.
You aren't allowed to feed the animals in the zoo.
4. May/Might I borrow your dictionary? →
Would you mind if I borrowed your dictionary?
5. Let's go to the beach. → **Shall we go to the beach?**
6. Perhaps she has got lost. → **She may have got lost.**
7. They are likely to buy a new house. →
It's likely that they will buy a new house. They'll probably buy a new house.
8. I'm sure she didn't go to the party. → **She can't have gone to the party.**
9. I'm sure he has got our message. → **He must have got your message.**
10. It's not necessary to water the plants again. →
You don't have to water the plants again/You don't need to water the plants again/You needn't water the plants again.
11. Was it necessary for you to get up so early? →
Did you need to get up so early?/Did you have to get up so early?
12. It wasn't necessary for him to buy so many flowers. →
He needn't have bought so many flowers.

○ *Complete the sentences using the words in bold. Use two to five words.*

1. Perhaps he didn't steal the money.
may He the money.
2. Shall I help you carry your luggage?
me Would you carry your luggage?
3. May I use your pencil sharpener?
if Would you your pencil sharpener?
4. It wasn't necessary for you to give me so much money.
have You so much money.
5. I'm sure Jenny has prepared enough food.
have Jenny enough food.
6. Was it necessary for Tim to spend all that money?
need Did Tim all that money?
7. Perhaps he's going away next month.
be He away next month.
8. She will probably accept our offer.
likely She our offer.
9. I'm sure he didn't attend the meeting.
have He the meeting.
10. Let's meet outside the Opera.

- we** Shall the Opera?
11. It's not necessary to wear such a heavy pullover.
need You such a heavy pullover.
12. You aren't allowed to walk on the grass.
not You on the grass.
13. Perhaps he's asleep at the moment.
be He at the moment.
14. Was it necessary for Julie to leave so early?
have Didso early?
15. It's likely that she will move house.
probably She will house.

***Exercise 187.** Complete the sentences using the words in bold. Use between two and five words.*

***Example:** The teacher gave me permission to leave the room.*

***could** The teacher said that I **could leave the** room.*

1. In the end, I couldn't make it to the party because I had too much work to do.
able In the end, I come to the party because I had too much work to do.
2. At school, she was the fastest runner in her class.
could At school, she than anyone else in her class.
3. Although I'm good at physics, I don't think I'll manage to pass the exam.
able In spite of being good at physics I don't think pass the exam.
4. We weren't obliged to attend all the classes because some of them were optional.
have We to all the classes because some of them were optional.
5. If I don't find a job soon, I won't be able to pay the bills.
have I need to pay the bills so find a job soon.
6. 'All telephone calls made from the office must be paid for,' said the manager.
had The manager told for all telephone calls made from the office.
7. I took a lot of suntan lotion with me but I didn't need it.
taken I so much suntan lotion with me.
8. The traffic warden said we weren't allowed to park the car outside the bank.
could The traffic warden told park the car outside the bank.
9. I think you can manage without a pullover in this weather.
need You wear a pullover in this weather.
10. Oxygen masks were essential when they got to the top of the mountain.
had They.....oxygen masks when they reached the top of the mountain.
11. I think you should give up smoking immediately.
had I think you smoking immediately.
12. I expect we will get there by 5.00, if there isn't too much traffic.
should We 5.00, if there isn't too much traffic.
13. Is it necessary for me to bring my passport?
have Do my passport?

14. I am sure that the cat is in the house somewhere.
be The cat in the house somewhere.
15. An aerial is not required with this radio.
have You don't an aerial with this radio.
16. It is very inconvenient if you can't drive.
to It's very inconvenient if drive.
17. I am sure that John is not the thief.
be John the thief.
18. I am certain that Norman will be late.
bound Norman late.
19. All students should report to the main hall at 9.00.
are All students to the main hall at 9.00.
20. I thought that you would know better!
ought You better!
21. It wasn't necessary for me to go out after all.
have I after all.
22. There was a plan for Jack to become manager, but he left.
was Jack manager, but he left.
23. It was a mistake for you to buy that car.
bought You that car.
24. I don't think that Sally enjoyed her holiday.
have Sally enjoyed her holiday.
25. It's possible that Bill saw me.
may Bill me.
26. I'm sure that Karen was a beautiful baby.
been Karen a beautiful baby.
27. Perhaps Alan didn't mean what he said.
meant Alan what he said.
28. It's possible that I left my wallet at home.
could I my wallet at home.
29. I think you were wrong to sell your bike.
shouldn't You bike.
30. The only thing I could do was run away!
had I run away!

Exercise 188. Complete the sentences using the words in bold. Use **two to five** words.

1. I'm sure she lost the race.
have She ... **must have lost** ... the race.
2. Perhaps she will phone us sometime today.
may She sometime today.
3. I don't think the Rogers have been living here long.
been The Rogers here long.
4. I'm sure he has spent all his money.
have He all his money.

5. I'm sure James won't be seeing the boss tomorrow.
be James the boss tomorrow.
6. Perhaps he is feeling ill.
be He ill.
7. I'm sure Alan wasn't driving carelessly.
been Alan carelessly.
8. Perhaps he had left before you called.
have He before you called.
9. I'm sure she is considering your offer.
be She your offer.
10. Perhaps they rented the flat
may They the flat.
11. It's forbidden to feed the animals.
not You the animals.
12. It isn't necessary to cut the grass; it's still quite short.
have You the grass; it's still quite short.
13. It's prohibited to take dogs into the restaurant.
not You into the restaurant.
14. It isn't necessary to dust the furniture; I'll do it later.
need You the furniture; I'll do it later.
15. Children aren't allowed to run in the corridor.
not Children in the corridor.
16. Sixth formers needn't wear school uniforms.
have Sixth formers school uniforms.
17. Tim went on a two-day trip. He took more clothes than necessary.
have Tim so many clothes on a two-day trip.
18. He decided not to take his passport because it wasn't necessary.
need He his passport.
19. We bought more food than was necessary for the party.
have We so much food for the party.
20. It wasn't necessary for Gloria to iron the clothes because Sue had already done it.
have Gloria the clothes because Sue had already done it.
21. It isn't necessary to have a visa to visit Australia.
need You a visa to visit Australia.
22. It wasn't necessary for Jim to accept the offer.
have Jim the offer.
23. Perhaps the car needs a new engine.
need The car *may/might need* a new engine.
24. Why don't you go to Canada for a holiday?
could You for a holiday.
25. Shall I get you a cup of tea?
me Would you a cup of tea?
26. Sue will probably go to see her aunt.
is Sue to see her aunt.
27. It wasn't necessary for them to buy such a big car as they did.

- have** They such a big car.
28. It's forbidden to smoke in this building.
- not** You in this building.
29. It would be a good idea to change your hairstyle.
- better** You your hairstyle.
30. Why didn't anybody warn me about the bus strike?
- have** You about the bus strike.
31. It isn't necessary for you to attend the meeting.
- need** You the meeting.
32. Let's go to the cinema.
- going** What the cinema?
33. I'm sure he is seeing Ruth.
- be** He Ruth.
34. It isn't necessary for you to come early tonight.
- have** You early tonight.
35. I'm sure he didn't send you this letter.
- sent** He this letter.
36. May I read your newspaper?
- mind** Would your newspaper?
37. I'm sure she wasn't lying to you.
- been** She to you.
38. She is likely to fail her exams.
- that** It is her exams.
39. It's forbidden to talk to the driver while he is driving.
- must** You the driver while he is driving.
40. It wasn't necessary for him to give me the money back so soon.
- given** He the money back so soon.
41. Perhaps she went to her uncle's.
- have** She to her uncle's.
42. Shall I help you lengthen your dress?
- me** Would you lengthen your dress?
43. Perhaps he got caught in the traffic.
- have** He in the traffic.
44. You should continue practising daily.
- keep** You should daily.
45. It wasn't necessary for Julie to buy him a present but she did.
- bought** Julie him a present.
46. Is there any chance of his coming to the party?
- likely** Is he to the party?
47. It was wrong of him not to tell us as soon as he found out.
- should** He as soon as he found out.
48. Anna didn't go to hospital; it was only a minor injury.
- have** Anna to hospital; it was only a minor injury.
49. It isn't necessary to make an appointment - come in any time tomorrow morning.
- need** You an appointment - come in any time tomorrow morning.

50. Patients must be accompanied by a nurse when they leave the ward.

allowed Patients the ward unless accompanied by a nurse.

ANSWER KEY

MODAL VERBS

1. CAN

Exercise 3

a) Example sentences:

1. I can count to twenty in Spanish, but my brother can't.
2. My friend John can run a marathon, but I can't.
3. My son can't swim, but I can.
4. I can't play chess, but my brother can.

b) Example questions:

1. Can you swim like a fish?
2. Can you understand sign language?

c) Example sentence:

1. When I was ten years old, I could swim, but I couldn't ride a bike.

Exercise 4

- | | | |
|-------------|-------------|----------|
| 1. couldn't | 4. can | 6. can |
| 2. can't | 5. couldn't | 7. can't |
| 3. couldn't | | |

Exercise 5

- | | |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 4. couldn't/wasn't able to | 8. could/was able to |
| 5. was able to | 9. were able to |
| 6. could/was able to | 10. couldn't/wasn't able to |
| 7. was able to | |

Exercise 6

- | | | |
|--------------------|-----------------|---------------------------|
| 1. will be able to | 3. could; can't | 5. won't be able to/can't |
| 2. were able to | 4. couldn't | 6. can/could |

Exercise 7

1. I enjoy being able to wear casual clothes.
2. I enjoy being able to watch TV when I want.
3. I enjoy being able to see my friends.
4. I enjoy being able to travel abroad.
5. I enjoy being able to stay up late.

Exercise 9

2. Can I ask you just one more question?
3. Can I give you a ring some time later?
4. Can we go swimming?

5. Can I sit down?
6. Can I have an ice-cream please?
7. Can I go home now?
8. Can I come back later?

Example request with 'could':

- 8 Could I come back later?

Exercise 10

2. Could I have a cigarette?
3. Could you tell me when the train leaves? :
4. Could we have a table near the window, please?
5. Could I have a ticket to London, please?
6. Could I go home early today, please?

Exercise 11

2. Do you think *I could start now?*
3. Do you mind if *I listen to the radio while you're working?*
4. Is it all right if *I come in now?*
5. Do you think *I could speak next?*

Exercise 12

2. You're allowed to *have visitors after three o'clock.*
3. You can all *go home as soon as you've finished work.*
4. You can *come back late as long as you don't make too much noise.*
5. With this card you are allowed to *cash a cheque for up to £250.*
6. You can *use my pen until I need it myself.*

Exercise 13

- | | | |
|--------|--------|---------|
| 1. yes | 5. yes | 8. yes |
| 2. no | 6. no | 9. no |
| 3. no | 7. no | 10. yes |
| 4. yes | | |

Exercise 14

- | | | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. weren't allowed to | 4. weren't allowed to | 7. was allowed to |
| 2. Could | 5. weren't allowed to | 8. could/were allowed to |
| 3. wasn't allowed to | 6. could | |
| /couldn't | | |

Exercise 15

1. They didn't want to sell the house but we were able to persuade them.
2. She could play the piano quite well.
3. I could see the mountains through the window.
4. I can remember vividly my mother telling me horror stories about her school days.
5. This chemical can be used as invisible ink.
6. In either case, the firm's competitors would have been able to sell lower priced furniture.
7. There is only one Success - to be able

to spend your life in your own way. 8. You have to be able to tell the difference between value and junk. 9. You should be able to judge the seller. 10. Being able to choose we feel less under pressure. 11. No doubt in the morning he will be able to explain everything. 12. We can go to the cinema tomorrow.

Exercise 16

1. get married vote
2. drive a car drive a taxi
3. drive a car vote
4. get married / leave school drive a car
- 5 vote
6. drive a car drive a taxi

Exercise 17

- | | |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| 2. could have gone | 4. could have gone |
| 3. could apply | 5. could come |

Exercise 19

1. Michael **could have passed** his final exams at school but he didn't take them.
2. Many people thought he **could have been** a professional boxer when he was younger but he didn't try.
3. When he was 25, he **could have got** married but he decided not to.
4. He **could have started** his own business once, but he didn't want to.
5. Being left some money he **could have travelled** but he didn't like to.
6. He **could have emigrated** to Australia a few years ago but he decided not to.
7. He **could have bought** a house, but he preferred to have a flat.
8. Being a sociable man he **could have made** friends but he didn't want to get involved.

Exercise 20

1. I don't understand it! My son could have become anything he wanted. Why did he decide to become a Magician?! (волшебник, фокусник)
2. I don't understand it. George could have married anybody he wanted. Why did he marry Mabel?
3. Those tourists could have eaten at any restaurant in town. Why did they eat at Joe's Cafeteria?
4. Gregory could have taken any course he wanted to. I wonder why he's taking first year French for the fourth time!
5. Michael could have watched anything on TV last night. Why did he watch an old western (ковбойский фильм) he had already seen several times before.
6. Mrs. Watson could have gone anywhere on her holiday. Nobody can understand why she stayed in London.
7. Melissa Grant could have chosen any role in any play. Why did she choose this awful play?
8. I can't believe it! My friend John could have sent me a postcard from any country he visited on his trip around the world. But I never heard from him once.
9. Sam could have written any kind of magazine article he wanted to. Why is his latest article about vacuum cleaners?
10. Professor Jones is a genius. He could have invented any kind of machine he wanted. I wonder why he invented a singing typewriter.
11. Tom had an important job interview

yesterday. He could have worn any tie he wanted to. I wonder why he picked the green and yellow striped one with orange polka dots!

Exercise 21

1. Could you translate this text? 2. You can buy this book at any shop. 3. He could have done it last week. He wasn't particularly busy. 4. He could not show us the calculations. They were not finished. 5. It's dark in the room, and I can't find my things. 6. She can't (couldn't) have made a mistake. 7. Can (could) they have been waiting for us? 8. You can't (couldn't) have been sent to me. I have nothing to do with this. 9. Could I have a cup of tea? 10. He said we could go. 11. I can return on the bus. 12. I could return on the bus. 13. Maurice stared at the letter. "Now where could it have come from?" 14. Evans was so illiterate that he could not have written a word of the report. 15. He took the menu and said: "Well now, I suppose you are hungry. Let's see what we can have." 16. It was a very long walk back to the hotel, he could never have done it without a map. 17. She had a square face that could never have looked young. 18. "What are you looking at, Willy?" "Nothing, dear." "You can't be looking at nothing." 19. She raised her voice and called, "Can you hear me?" 20. She could have been back from her holiday by now. 21. No one could have impressed me more than you did. 22. At that moment I could have killed him. 23. He cannot (couldn't) have been more than thirty when we first met. 24. I could swim when I was five. Daddy taught me. 25. They're very nice to me. They couldn't be more polite and obliging. 26. It's getting dark. What time can it be now? 27. I have been able to swim since I was five. 28. We were able to convince the students of the need for wider reading.

Exercise 23

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>can</u> , is able to | 6. <u>can</u> , am able to |
| 2. was able to | 7. <u>could</u> |
| 3. <u>can</u> , are able to | 8. <u>can</u> , are able to |
| 4. <u>can't</u> , I'm not able to | 9. <u>can</u> |
| 5. <u>can</u> | 10. <u>couldn't</u> , wasn't able to |

Exercise 24

1. a. were able to; b. could/was able to
2. a. could/was able to; b. was able to
3. a. could/were able to; b. was able to

Exercise 25

- | | |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. to be able to find | 5. will be able to investigate |
| 2. can count | 6. will be able to work |
| 3. can give | 7. being able to put forward |
| 4. be able to start | 8. can meet |

Exercise 26

1. Can I have another drink?

2. Could I leave my books with you?
3. Can I call my brother from your phone?
4. Could I talk to you about my job application?
5. Can't/Couldn't I park my car on your drive?
6. Can I ask you exactly what your job is?
7. Can't/Couldn't I pick some of the apples off the tree in your garden?
8. Can't/Couldn't I come with you to your summer house?
9. Could I have the last piece of your birthday cake?

Exercise 27

1. could/were allowed to
2. was allowed to
3. were allowed to
4. couldn't/wasn't allowed to
5. was allowed to
6. couldn't/asn't allowed to
7. were allowed to
8. couldn't/wasn't allowed to ... could/was allowed to
9. could/were allowed to
10. was allowed to

2. May

Exercise 29

2. Yes, you can borrow my car
3. Can/Could you help me with my luggage, please?
4. May/Might I try on these trousers, please?
5. You may not use your walkman on the plane.

Exercise 30

1. 'Yes, of course, you ~~could~~.' → 'can' or 'may'
2. ...that you ~~might~~ not drive a car in Britain... → 'cannot drive' or 'are not allowed to'
3. correct
4. 'Yes, of course, you ~~might~~.' → 'can' or 'may'
5. My brother ~~may~~ borrow my sister's computer ... → 'can' or 'is allowed to'
6. correct
7. My sister's daughter ~~could~~ stay up late ... → 'was allowed to'
8. correct

Exercise 31

2. She may/might be busy.
3. She may/might be working.
4. She may/might want to be alone.
5. She may/might have been ill yesterday.

6. She may/might have gone home early.
7. She may/might have had to go home early.
8. She may/might have been working yesterday.
9. She may/might not want to see me.
10. She may/mightnot be working today.
11. She may/mightnot have been feeling well yesterday.

Exercise 33

- | | |
|--------------|-----------------------------|
| 2. be | 4. be waiting |
| 3. have been | 5. have <i>or</i> have read |

Exercise 34

(Note: **may** and **might** are equally acceptable for these sentences)

3. He may/might have slept badly last night.
4. She may/might have dropped something.
5. It may/might be under the bed.
6. They may/might be planning a surprise.
7. He may/might have had some bad news.
8. She may/might be working at home.
9. She may/might have felt tired.

Exercise 35

2. a. She may/might be watching TV in her room.
b. She may/might have gone out.
3. a. It may/might be in the car.
b. You may/might have left it in the restaurant last night.
4. a. He may/might have been in the bath.
b. He may/might not have heard the bell.

Exercise 36

- | | |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 3. might not have been invited. | 5. couldn't have been an accident. |
| 4. couldn't have been invited. | 6. might not have been an accident. |

Exercise 37

2. might be able to meet/see
3. might have to work
4. might have to go

Exercise 38

2. I may/might not go out this evening.
3. Tom may/might not like the present I bought for him.
4. Sue may/might not be able to meet us this evening.

Exercise 39

2. may/might as well go

3. may/might as well have another drink
4. We may/might as well watch it. *or* ...watch the film

Exercise 40

2. – e. Have some of the local currency with you. – Why? – You might not find banks open when you arrive.
3. – a. Reserve a hotel room before you leave. – Why? – You could have trouble finding a place to stay.
4. – b. Don't take any valuables with you. – Why? – Someone might steal them or you might lose them.
5. – c. Always carry your passport with you. – Why? – You might have to prove your identity.

Exercise 41

1. You weren't all that busy. You might have helped us. 2. Ask him if we may look round the laboratory. 3. He might do it for you. It is not at all difficult for him. 4. He might have broken the window. 5. She may be late. 6. They may be working at the same problem. 7. It may rain towards evening. 8. They may not have been in town last night. 9. They may have thought that we won't come in this rain. 10. I agree it may have been a mistake to let Peter go abroad. I thought it might bring him back to his work. 11. I may not have mentioned it in my letters, but I did quite a lot of work up there. 12. Not seeing either her father or the boy, Meggie thought they might be rearranging some of the books on the shelves. 13. You may have heard his name. 14. It occurred to me that he was secretly proud of his son, though he may not have known it. 15. He's got a big family. I can easily imagine that he may (might) be looking for a better job. 16. I had the impression that the storm might break any minute. 17. She wasn't a Swede, but she might have been taken for one. 18. He might (may) be in the hotel waiting for me. 19. I might have missed the last bus.

Exercise 42

1. It may rain. 2. It may not rain. 3. It can't rain. 4. Can it rain? 5. He may have seen them. 6. He may not have seen them. 7. He can't have seen them. 8. He can't possibly have seen them. 9. Can he have seen them? 10. Where can he have seen them? 11. They may be waiting for us. 12. They may not be waiting for us. 13. They can't be waiting for us. 14. Can they be waiting for us? 15. Who can they be waiting for? 16. They can't possibly be waiting for us. 17. I may (might) as well be off. 18. I may (might) just as well stay at home. 19. I might have lost the keys. 20. It might have been worse. 21. The weather couldn't be worse. 22. I couldn't but stay with them. 23. I couldn't help agreeing with them. 24. I couldn't care less.

Exercise 43

1. ✓
2. It can't/couldn't be true.
3. so it may/might/could take Hugh a long time to get here.

4. they may not/might not have any flowers left. ('they won't have any flowers left' is also possible)
5. ✓
6. *Possible answers:* Could you be given ...; Could it be that you'll be given ...; Are you likely to be given ...; Might you be given ...(rather formal)
7. I may/might be wrong
8. ✓
9. ✓
10. *Possible answers:* Could it be from Ron?/Is it likely to be from Ron?/Might it be from Ron? (rather formal)

Exercise 44

1. a 2. b 3. a

Exercise 45

- 1b 2a 3a 4b 5b

Exercise 46

- | | |
|----------------|--------------|
| 1. might | 5. could |
| 2. might | 6. may/could |
| 3. might/could | 7. may |
| 4. could | 8. could |

Exercise 47

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. It may be very hot here tomorrow. | 4. Cats can live for 20 years. |
| 2. I may be wrong. | 5. Your cat may live for 20 years. |
| 3. Anyone can be wrong. | |

3. Must

Exercise 49

- | | |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 2. They must be tired out. | 4. You must be very worried. |
| 3. He must be delighted. | 5. You must be very proud of him. |

Exercise 50

- | | |
|--|---|
| 2. He must have done it. | 5. They must have gone shopping. |
| 3. You must have seen him. | 6. Someone must have taken it by mistake. |
| 4. You must have enjoyed your holiday. | |

Exercise 51

2. It can't be ten o'clock.
3. She can't be her sister.
4. He can't be very well even now.
5. They can't be in.
6. You can't be very far from Birmingham.

7. He can't be feeling very well.

Exercise 52

- | | | |
|-------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| 1. must be | 4. can't | 6. must have been |
| 2. can't | 5. can't have left | 7. must have taken |
| 3. must have gone | | |

Exercise 53

- | | | |
|------------|------------|---------------------|
| 3. needn't | 6. needn't | 8. must ... mustn't |
| 4. must | 7. needn't | 9. needn'tmust |
| 5. mustn't | | |

Exercise 54

- | | | |
|--------------------|----------------------|------------|
| 1. were allowed to | 4. can | 7. may not |
| 2. May | 5. Are we allowed to | 8. mustn't |
| 3. Might | 6. Can I | |

Exercise 55

- | | |
|-------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. must be | 6. can't have enjoyed |
| 2. must have been | 7. may be delivering |
| 3. can't be | 8. can't have been concentrating |
| 4. can't be | 9. must be |
| 5. may be having | |

Exercise 56

- | | |
|-------------|--------------|
| 3. have met | 6. have sold |
| 4. know | 7. be |
| 5. be | 8. have lent |

Exercise 57

- | | | | | |
|------|------|-------|-------|------|
| 1. c | 2. d | 3. e. | 4. b. | 5. a |
|------|------|-------|-------|------|

Exercise 61

1. I must work as hard as I can this week. 2. But Milly saw them. She must have told you about it. 3. He must get there before eight. 4. She lit the fire and said: "Do sit down, you must be frozen." 5. I must wash up all the glasses. 6. John, turning from the door, noticed that he was standing upon a letter which lay on the mat. It must have been delivered sometime after his return. 7. "We are having tea early," said Kate. "You must be starving." 8. "Oh, you!" he said as he looked up in surprise. He must have forgotten my name. 9. I did not see Jim but I knew that he must be waiting somewhere. 10. I waited about half an hour, and was just thinking that something must have happened to Kathy when she arrived in a taxi. 11. She looks so pale. She must have been ill. 12. I must write to them today. 13. I must do something for him, Jack thought. 14. "Phil, there was a letter in your book." "Was there?" "You must

have forgotten it.” 15. I must have been standing there for some time, lost in thought, when I saw a dark figure emerge into the dim light in front of me.

Exercise 62

1. I don't want to take the examinations. Anyhow I probably shan't be in London then. 2. There had probably never been (must never have been) so much money at his disposal. 3. Martin was on the other side of the fireplace. I thought that he could not have heard their words. (it was impossible for him to hear their words.) 4. He must have failed to talk him into going with us. 5. He probably just hasn't had time for you so far. (He must never have had time for you so far.) 6. They must have missed him at the station. 7. I tolerated it so long because I thought she loved me in her own way. But, of course, she can't have ever loved me. (She must never have loved me.) 8. The teacher must have omitted (left out) your name by mistake. 9. She must be unaware that you are here. 10. We must have seen nothing of her since the summer. 11. “Can (could) I talk to you tomorrow morning?” “I probably shall be busy in the morning.” 12. He won't speak English probably. 13. There must be no one at home now. 14. “Who is the old man?” “The new president of the company.” “Don't joke with me.” “I'm not joking. You can't have read the papers (must have read no papers).”

Exercise 63

1. he can't have done. 2. you may be right. 3. they may have forgotten. 4. can it be. 5. he can't have been meaning. 6. he can't have refused. 7. he can't have read. 8. where can you have met. 9. he must have heard. 10. it must have been. 11. he must have been fishing. 12. she must be out. 13. what can you have brought. 14. he may not know. 15. can he be giving. 16. the news may be broadcast. 17. they must have taken no notes. 18. can we be out of. 19. he may forget to rule a margin. 20. can something have happened; the car must be undergoing. 21. you can't possibly get this thing done. 22. what can he be doing. 23. it can't have been more than a mile away. 24. she may have been asleep, she may not have heard the telephone. 25. you must have used up all the money.

Exercise 64

1. They must do as they are told. 2. I suppose I must put on my other shoes for the party. 3. I can't leave without paying. 4. They must return all the money. 5. You might have given them a call to say that you were not coming. 6. I was so hungry that I might have eaten it up at once. 7. “Must I take an umbrella?” “Yes. It looks like raining.” 8. Were you able to finish the work? 9. The situation (things) couldn't be worse. 10. Could you come a little later? 11. Can you have written it yourself? 12. It can't possibly happen to me. 13. I went over the possible occasions in my mind when I might have met him. 14. He may not have wished to speak. 15. She never spoke of her childhood, and there must have been some reason for it. 16. But really I can't possibly walk further. 17. “He can rest in my office,” said Mr. Bold. 18. Norah led the boy to her room. I could hear them talking there. 19. “You mustn't minimize the danger,” he said. 20. I shall/will be able to write to them tomorrow. 21. No one could have done more than you did. 22. Nick was a son that any parent might have been

proud of. 23. I think he has fallen in love with you because he must have never met anyone quite like you. 24. I don't think I shall go out today. I may just as well be comfortable at the fire in this weather. 25. You might have done something about it. 26. After all, one can't help admiring a man whose principles are so high. 27. You can do what you like. 28. "I don't see what else I could have done," he said. 29. His mother is again in hospital. She must be seriously ill. 30. There was no one among them to whom I could turn for help. 31. I can't see how you can have been so foolish. 32. I couldn't help thinking that Miss Grey had given herself away by saying that. 33. He moved so quietly that he could not have disturbed the lightest sleeper. 34. Where are my spectacles? No, they are not here. I must have left them at home. 35. Must I stay here all day? 36. He asked if he could depend on me. 37. He asked if I could take his class for the next period. 38. When the child is so ill you must feel wretched. 39. You must get him here with all his stuff. 40. "This must be unlike your home," said Bart. 41. I said he could take my car. 42. I couldn't care less. 43. She knew what he must be feeling. 44. He can't be more than three or four years older than you. 45. The weather may change for the better yet. 46. She can't be unaware of it. 47. I won't be able yet to give you a definite answer on Monday. 48. They may not have come yet. 49. They may be still investigating the matter. 50. They may have been at the party but I didn't see them. 51. Who can have turned the light on in my room? 52. Your father is very angry. What can you have done again? 53. It's quite dark. I must have been sleeping a long time. 54. He will probably give us a call soon. 55. Can he have told you to come here? 56. "Where is my key?" "You must have lost it." "I can't have lost it. I may have left it in the pocket of my coat."

Exercise 65

(note: **may** and **might** are equally acceptable for 4, 6 and 8)

3. can't be hers
4. may/might be in the car/office
5. must/might have been a present
6. may/might not have seen you / can't have seen you
7. can't have done
8. may/might have been his brother/father/cousin ... can't have been Peter

Exercise 66

- | | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1. d | 2. c | 3. f | 4. e | 5. a | 6. b |
|------|------|------|------|------|------|

Exercise 67

Example answers:

3. Kay must have changed her mind about marrying him.
4. A pickpocket may/might have stolen it.
5. She must/may/might/be renting it from him.
6. It must be a bomb!
7. It may/might have been sent by my brother.
8. She must have been held up (in the traffic).

Exercise 69

1. She may have misunderstood you.
It's possible that she misunderstood you.
Perhaps/Maybe she misunderstood you.
2. They must be tired.
3. You are not allowed to park here.
You may/must not park here.
4. I'm sure she hasn't sold her house.
She can't have sold her house.
5. He's likely to object.
He'll probably object.
6. We might have to wait for them.
We could have to wait for them.
It's possible that we will have to wait for them.
Perhaps we will have to wait for them.
Maybe we will have to wait for them.
7. She can't be Australian.
I don't think she is Australian.
8. He must be terrified.
9. It's likely they'll want something to eat.
They are likely to want something to eat.
10. She is likely to have got lost.
Probably she has got lost.
11. Is he likely to have forgotten all about it?
Is it likely that he forgot all about it?

Exercise 70

2. ... can't be feeling sick ...
3. ... may/might have been working...
4. ... may/might be on...
5. ... may/might have been too ill...
6. ... must have informed the police...
7. ... may/might be sunbathing this time...
8. ... must have warned the soldiers...
9. ... can't have been working...
10. ... may/might have been telling you...
11. ... may/might have been working ...
12. ... may come with...
13. ... can't/couldn't have prepared...
14. ... may/might have been asleep...
15. ... may be waiting...
16. ... can't/couldn't have known...
17. ... must have stopped...
18. ... may/might have left...

19. ... must have been lying...

4. Should 5. Ought to

Exercise 72

- | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 2. h | 4. f | 6. g | 8. a | 10. e |
| 3. b | 5. i | 7. d | 9. j | |

Exercise 73

- | | |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| 3. You ought to | 7. You ought not to |
| 4. You ought not to | 8. You ought to |
| 5. You ought not to | 9. You ought not to |
| 6. You ought to | 10. You ought to |

Exercise 75

3. should have got home earlier.
4. We should have read the instructions carefully.
5. You shouldn't have spent so much money.
6. You should have told me you were coming.
7. They shouldn't have made such a noise.
8. John should have paid his bill./ John shouldn't have left the restaurant without paying his bill.
9. Jack should have explained what he was doing.
10. You should have sent Mary a birthday card.

1. You ought to have phoned.
2. They oughtn't to have made such a mess.
3. I ought to have got home earlier.
4. We ought to have read the instructions carefully.
5. You oughtn't to have spent so much money.

Exercise 76

3. ought to be / should be an exciting game.
4. should be / ought to be a comfortable trip.
5. ought to be / should be a nice day.
6. should be / ought to be very profitable.
7. ought to be / should be nice and quiet.

Exercise 77

2. You ought to/might/could/should ask me before you borrow my favourite CD next time.
3. You ought to/might/could/should get up early/earlier.
4. You ought to/might/could/should replace my scarf next time you borrow it.
5. You ought to/might/could/should have called me.
6. You ought to/might/could/should have reported it to the police

Exercise 78

1. I'm sorry. I shouldn't have said that. 2. I think you ought to show some respect for your elders. 3. I thought you ought to know about it. 4. Now I've upset her. I shouldn't have said that. 5. "Have I said something I shouldn't have?" he asked his mother. 6. You shouldn't ask questions like that. 7. Well, you were right. I shouldn't have done it that way. 8. What do you think I ought to do? 9. I've been more frank with you than I should have been. 10. I said she should never have come with him at all. 11. But you should not be so critical at your age, Frank. 12. "Ann is my sister." "I ought to (should) have guessed. You take after her." 13. She ought to (should) have remembered about it earlier. 14. I want to do what I shouldn't do.

Exercise 79

2. I think smoking should be banned in restaurants.
3. I don't think you should go out this evening.
4. I think the government should resign.

Exercise 80

- | | |
|---------------------|------------------------|
| 3. should come | 7. should have won |
| 4. should do | 8. should be |
| 5. should have done | 9. should have arrived |
| 6. should win | |

Exercise 81

3. We should have reserved a table.
4. The shop should be open. / The shop should have opened by now.
5. She shouldn't be driving so fast. *or* She shouldn't be doing 50 miles an hour.
6. You should have come to see me.
7. The driver in front shouldn't have stopped without warning.
8. I should have been looking where I was going, *or* I should have looked where I was going.

Exercise 82

1. **should or must**: '**must**' gives a stronger recommendation
 2. must
 3. must
 4. **should or must**: '**must**' gives stronger advice and is perhaps more likely than '**should**' in this context
 5. **should or must**: '**must**' gives a stronger recommendation
 6. must
- (2,3 and 6 include logical conclusions, so we use 'must', not '~~should~~'))

Exercise 84

1. Well, I thought it was too absurd that we should live next door and not speak. 2. How strange that he should have said nothing about it. 3. It was very improbable that

John should be so busy that he had no time in the whole week to see her. 4. There was no reason why they should not be there. 5. "What is his name?" "Why should I tell you?" 6. I'm sorry that you should think so badly of me. 7. I don't know why he should want to see George. 8. It was strange that at her age she should be so indifferent to parties. 9. Still Rosemary did not see why she should go. 10. "There's no objection to my seeing him, is there?" "Why should there be?" 11. I'm sorry that my brother should be responsible for this. 12. How did you happen to bring him with you? Why should he have wanted to come here? 13. He was pleased that Kate should have called the child after him. 14. What can have happened to him? I can't think why he should be so late. 15. It's funny that her instinct should have been so right. 16. He seemed flattered that someone should want to read something he had written. 17. It made me angry that he should be so weak-willed. 18. She began to tell her husband about Ted, but soon she stopped and said: "But I don't know why I should bore you with these stories about Ted."

Exercise 85

1. can't have done
2. may/might/could have left
3. needn't have called me
4. may/might/could be
5. can't/couldn't have been counted
6. mustn't/can't take
7. must be preparing
8. didn't need to reserve
9. could/should/ought to/might have told
10. have to pay
11. may be on
12. ought to have cleaned up

6. To have to

Exercise 89

- | | | | |
|---------------|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| 1. has to go | 2. must come | 3. must tell | 4. has to wake |
| 5. have to do | 6. have to go | 7. must take/do | |

Exercise 90

1. must
2. Both are wrong, '...**can't**...' is the most likely alternative.
3. must
4. Both are wrong, '...**can't**...' or '...**couldn't**...' are the most likely alternatives.
5. had to
6. had to
7. must

Exercise 91

1. + f. 2. + h. 3. + e. 4. + a. 5. + i. 6. + b. 7. + g. 8. + d. 9. + c.

Exercise 92

1. ... (**'has to be done'** is also possible)...
2. **Did you have to pay** Bob to paint the fence? (~~**'Had you got to'**~~ is not possible)
3. The road **has got to be built** to take traffic away from the city centre, (**'has to be'** is also possible)
4. You rarely **have to tell** Mary anything twice. (**'You have rarely got to'** is less likely)
5. **Have we got to get** up early tomorrow morning? (**'Do we have to'** is also possible)
6. **She didn't have to take** time off work when her son was ill. (~~**'She hadn't got to'**~~ is not possible)
7. Peter sometimes **has to clean** his parents' car before they give him any pocket money. (**'Peter has sometimes got to'** is less likely)

Exercise 94

- | | | |
|------------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| 1. must be | 5. have to go | 8. should win |
| 2. don't have to | 6. can't be | 9. might not know |
| 3. had better | 7. have to wear | 10. should do |
| 4. could be | | |

Exercise 95

2. may/might/could be trying to call us.
3. must/have to finish the test in one hour.
4. may/might/could be working in the garden.
5. must be hungry.
6. may/might/could take us out to dinner.
7. can't have reached the station yet.
8. must/has to take her medication every morning.
9. may/might/could have gone to the supermarket.
10. can't/couldn't have left the party early.

Exercise 96

- | | | | | | | | |
|------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. C | 2. A | 3. C | 4. A | 5. B | 6. A | 7. A | 8. C |
| 9. B | 10. C | 11. B | 12. A | 13. C | 14. C | 15. C | 16. B |

7. To be to

Exercise 99

- | | | | | | |
|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| 1a | 2b | 3b | 4b | 5a | 6b |
|----|----|----|----|----|----|

Exercise 100

1. is to appear ('will appear' is also possible)
2. will become
3. is to move ('will move' is also possible)
4. will feel
5. is to begin ('will begin' is also possible)
6. is to resign ('will resign' is also possible)
7. will arrive
8. will fit

Exercise 102

- | | | |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. <u>I don't believe it</u> | 5. <u>It's only natural</u> | 8. <u>It's not a good idea</u> |
| 2. <u>She always is</u> | 6. <u>It isn't allowed</u> | 9. <u>I expect so</u> |
| 3. <u>It's the rule</u> | 7. <u>It's the rule</u> | 10. <u>That's my advice</u> |
| 4. <u>if you don't want to</u> | | |

Exercise 104

1. Bart was to see his brother-in-law for lunch the next day, but he saw no reason to tell his wife about that. 2. She had to drink tea without sugar. 3. I knew that Pat was to come to the club. 4. I was somewhat surprised to find so many people in the hall in which I was to speak. 5. I don't have to be there till three. 6. Rudy was invited for dinner at Mary's house. After dinner they were to go to a movie. 7. One of the guests sat down beside me. I didn't have to be told who it was. 8. They bombed us all day yesterday and we had to stay in the trenches. 9. "Your hair is short and curly." "I had scarlet fever and it had to be cut short." 10. "I never told you I was at a public school, did I?" said Alec. "You didn't have to." 11. Then Frank took me for a long drive. We were to dine with the Greens at seven. 12. It was announced on the radio that the President was to speak that night. 13. He had to move closer to hear her. 14. At this hour Philip was never to be seen. 15. We had to bend the flower to get it into the box.

8. Need

Exercise 106

1. needn't close/don't need to close
2. don't need to boil
3. needn't carry/don't need to carry
4. needn't carry/don't need to carry
5. don't need to have
6. don't need to vaccinate
7. needn't go/don't need to go
8. don't need to pay

Exercise 107

2. She needn't have bought any egg.
3. You needn't have shouted (at me).
4. He needn't have sold his car.

5. We needn't have taken the camera.
6. I needn't have rushed / I needn't have hurried

Exercise 108

2. You needn't have walked home. You could have taken a taxi.
3. You needn't have stayed at a hotel. You could have stayed with us.
4. She needn't have phoned me in the middle of the night. She could have phoned me in the morning.
5. You needn't have left without saying anything. You could have said goodbye to me.

Exercise 109

- | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. needn't have phoned | 6. didn't have to cook |
| 2. didn't have to phone | 7. needn't have cooked |
| 3. didn't have to make | 8. needn't have paid |
| 4. didn't have to wake | 9. needn't have brought |
| 5. needn't have brought | 10. needn't have bought |

Exercise 110

- | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| 2. needn't have come | 9. didn't need to send |
| 3. didn't need to take | 10. needn't have booked |
| 4. didn't need to order | 11. needn't have spent |
| 5. needn't have washed | 12. didn't need to have |
| 6. didn't need to buy | 13. didn't need to do |
| 7. didn't need to pack | 14. didn't need to take |
| 8. needn't have called | |

Exercise 111

1. I need hardly tell you
2. ✓ / ('I don't need to remind you' is also possible)
3. We mustn't allow our competitors
4. We were delighted that we didn't have to sell off (or didn't need to sell off)
5. ✓
6. You don't have to work (or don't need to work)
7. You needn't worry ('mustn't worry' or 'don't have to worry' are also possible)

Exercise 112

- | | | | | | | | |
|------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|------|
| 1. B | 2. A | 3. C | 4. A | 5. B | 6. C | 7. A | 8. A |
| 9. C | 10. A | 11. C | 12. B | 13. B | 14. A | 15. B | |

Exercise 113

1. Tom needs a new coat.
2. He doesn't need new shoes.
3. Does he need a new shirt?
4. The work needed time and patience.
5. That blind man needs somebody to help him cross the street.
6. My shoes need mending (need to be mended).
7. Does he need to work so late? / Need he work so late?
8. He doesn't need to work so late, does he? / He

needn't work so late, need he? 9. You need to start early in order to arrive before dark. 10. You'll have to (*or* you'll need to) hurry if you want to catch the 2.15 train. 11. We didn't need to hurry. 12. We needn't have hurried.

Exercise 114

1. What she did is so silly that we needn't discuss it. 2. It was so near that even Alan who hated walking, agreed that they needn't take his car. 3. We needn't cook all the potatoes. 4. Need we change for dinner? 5. We have lots of time. We need not have hurried. 6. Need we go there after all? 7. You needn't spend all the money on them. 8. "I told your uncle I would speak to you." "You needn't have troubled. I've promised my parents to stay here a little longer." 9. He put the envelope down on the table. "The money is all there," he said. "You needn't bother to count it." 10. You know the children. They are destructive. I needn't tell you that. 11. He knew he did not need to explain anything to anyone. 12. I don't think we need give her so much of our attention. 13. You needn't be afraid of me. 14. We needn't listen to all the speakers.

Exercise 115

1. "Shall I tell you how it all happened?" "No, you needn't. I know all about it." 2. The weather is warm now, and I don't have to make a fire in the evening. 3. He was well aware of what he wanted to say and he didn't need to search for words. 4. I didn't have to do any shopping as my husband was dining out that day. 5. He is on holiday at present. He doesn't have to start work till autumn. 6. Tell my son he needn't work till autumn. He should have a long holiday at home. 7. She knew that she did not have (did not need) to be present during their conversation. 8. He didn't have to live in London in summer.

Exercise 116

1. You should not have given way to her whims. 2. You shouldn't (oughtn't to) have brought your friend tonight. I don't feel well. 3. I oughtn't to (shouldn't) have told them that. 4. You needn't have booked a room in the hotel. We have a spare bedroom. 5. You oughtn't to (shouldn't) have married so early. 6. You needn't have written to him about it. He will feel worried. 7. You needn't have come to London. He is not here. 8. You shouldn't have bought this car. It's much too expensive. 9. You needn't have brought your car. There is no bridge over the river here. 10. You needn't have been so rude to her. She is weeping now.

Exercise 117

a. 1 b. 2 c. 2 d. 2 e. 1 f. 2 g. 1 h. 2
i. 2 j. 2

Exercise 118

1. a 2. b 3. a 4. b 5. b 6. a 7. b 8. a

Exercise 119

1. He must have come this way: here are his footprints. 2. We needn't have hurried. We are too early. 3. Would you like a cup of tea? 4. Would you like me to buy vegetables? 5. Shall/should I help you with your bags? 6. Why don't we have dinner at a restaurant? 7. Shall I close the window? 8. Shall we buy apples? 9. I've lost my bag. What shall I do? 10. Students shall not eat during lectures. 11. Children must not be left alone! 12. I needn't tell you what kind of men they are. 13. You don't need to be smart to solve this problem. 14. We don't need to cut taxes. 15. You don't have to be rich to live a happy life. 16. I have to go and talk to her. 17. I must go and talk to her. 18. I have to/have got to eat three burgers before I am full. 19. He has to have at least nine hours' sleep a night. 20. I didn't have to explain anything.

Exercise 120

- | | |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 2. must | 6. must |
| 3. must | 7. needn't/don't have to |
| 4. mustn't | 8. mustn't |
| 5. needn't/don't have to | |

9. Shall

Exercise 123

- | | | |
|------------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| 2. shall I wait | 5. shall I play | 7. shall I ask |
| 3. shall I paint | 6. shall I talk | 8. shall I invite |
| 4. shall I tell | | |

Exercise 124

2. Shall I buy it?
 3. What shall I buy /give/get Ann (for her birthday)?
 4. Where shall we go?
 5. Shall we go by car or (shall we) walk? ... or (shall we go) on foot?
 6. What time shall I phone (you)?
- чего не следует делать.

Exercise 125

1. Shall I give him a call right away? 2. She shall regret saying it, I'm sure. 3. You shall not leave the room until I allow you. 4. Shall I switch on the light? It is getting dark in the room. 5. You shall get your order tomorrow, no doubt. 6. Shall I read? 7. Shall we go upstairs? 8. How much shall I give the porter? 9. Well, when we have found out anything, you shall hear about it. 10. "Will you let me go home?" "No. You shall sail to San Francisco on Tuesday." 11. It can be done and it shall be done if you will only help me. 12. "Shall I play to you?" she said. "Yes, do, please." 13. When he says "do it", I say "it shall be done." 14. "I want this luggage taken to my room." "It shall be taken up at once, sir."

10. Will

Exercise 127

- | | | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| 2. I'll turn/I'll switch/I'll put | 5. I'll show/I'll teach | 8. I'll give/ I'll bring |
| 3. I'll go | 6. I'll have | 9. I'll stay/ I'll wait |
| 4. I'll do | 7. I'll send | |

Exercise 128

- | | |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|
| 2. I'll go to bed | 4. I'll play tennis (today) |
| 3. I think I'll walk | 5. I'll go swimming |

Exercise 130

- | | | |
|---------------|--------------------------|-------------------|
| 3. I'll meet | 6. I won't forget | 9. Are you doing |
| 4. I'll lend | 7. does your train leave | 10. Will you come |
| 5. I'm having | 8. won't tell | 11. I won't tell |

Exercise 131

- | | | |
|------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|
| 2. will look | 5. will be /'ll be | 7. will come /'ll come |
| 3. will like /'ll like | 6. will meet /'ll meet | 8. will be /'ll be |
| 4. will get /'ll get | | |

Exercise 132

- | | | | | |
|----------|--------------|----------|--------------|----------|
| 2. won't | 3. will /'ll | 4. won't | 5. will /'ll | 6. won't |
|----------|--------------|----------|--------------|----------|

Exercise 133

2. Do you think it will rain?
3. When do you think it will finish?
4. How much do you think it will cost?
5. Do you think they'll get married? / ... they will get married?
6. What time do you think you'll be back? / ... you will be back?
7. What do you think will happen?

Exercise 134

1. It **is going to** soon rain. Look at the clouds.
2. You **are to** stay here till I come back.
3. I **refuse to** do what you tell me.
4. I **promise you'll** have an apple after dinner.
5. What **are you going to** do now?
6. We **hope to** visit all the sights of London.
7. When **do you intend to** learn English properly?
8. This time next week I **hope to be** in St. Petersburg.
9. Do they **mean to** follow us all the way home?

Exercise 135

- | | |
|----------|---------------|
| 1. Can | 4. will |
| 2. Shall | 5. What about |

3. shall

6. Would you like me

Exercise 136

2. I'll drive you to the airport tomorrow. Do you want me to drive you to the airport tomorrow? etc.

3. You should study law. Why don't you study law? etc.

4. I'll help you with the party. Do you want me to help you with the party?

5. You should get your eyes checked. Why don't you get your eyes checked?

Exercise 137

2. cannot ... can

3. could ... couldn't

4. may not ... may

5. might ... might not

6. must ... mustn't

7. shall ... shan't

8. should ... shouldn't

9. will ... won't

10. would ... wouldn't

11. oughtn't ... ought

Exercise 138

2. Can I speak to Nicky please?

3. Could you give me a few examples?

4. May I have a word with you please?

5. Why must she be so nasty to me?

6. What shall I give them for dinner?

7. Shall I shut the door?

8. Where should I meet you tonight?

9. Who should I see about my teaching programme?

10. Will you have a drink, Doctor?

11. Would you please tell her that Adrian phoned?

Exercise 139

1. It is Sunday today and all the shops will be closed. 2. I have paid the money, and I will see the show. 3. I think I'll go and watch the telly if you'll excuse me. 4. "Uncle Edwin," the boy cried, "you promised to help me with my toy train. It won't run." 5. You must control your temper. I will not have you behave like that in my house. 6. If you will follow me, I'll show you the way. 7. Father will not have you speak to me like that. 8. I can't understand why the window won't open. 9. I will never change my work. 10. I ask her not to smoke, but she will continue smoking anyway. 11. The child disobeys his parents. He will be punished. 12. She will not tell me what is wrong, just keeps crying. 13. You look tired. I'll cook dinner tonight. 14. Will you shut the door, please? 15. I promise I won't be late tomorrow. 16. Just wait – you'll regret this! 17. Oh, I've left the door open. I'll go and shut it. 18. After what has just happened, I won't believe a word you say again. 19. The orange won't peel. 20. You won't like this food: it is very spicy.

Exercise 140

3. And this will be the person in question.

4. This will be your mother.
5. You will have noticed it already.
6. She will have left a message for us.
7. Something will have been decided.
8. The man will have noticed you leaving the grounds.
9. It will have been someone the dog knew.
10. That will be the asylum.

11. Would

Exercise 142

2. Would you like soup with your meal?
3. Would you like to go home now or later?
4. Would you like sugar in your tea?
5. Would you like me to type these letters?
6. Would you like us to help you plan the meeting?
7. Would you like a single or a double room?
8. Would you like me to start work early tomorrow?

Exercise 144

1. Would you mind closing the door?
2. Would you mind turning the music down?
3. Would you mind not smoking?
4. Would you mind not speaking French?
5. Would you mind waiting a minute?
6. Would you mind leaving a message?

Exercise 145

- | | |
|------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 2. learning English. | 5. going into politics. |
| 3. being chairman. | 6. catching an early train. |
| 4. going back to work. | |

Exercise 146

2. I've asked John to help but he **won't**.
3. I've decided to take the job and I **won't** change my mind.
4. He tried to put his arm around her, but she **wouldn't** let him.
5. He hates the radio; he **won't** listen to it.
6. She switched on the machine but it **wouldn't** work.
7. He proposed to her but she **wouldn't** marry him.
8. I pushed hard but the door **wouldn't** open.
9. Tell him I **won't** discuss anything until I've spoken with my colleagues.

Exercise 147

1. rent a video
2. you like me to help you write the report

3. buy Peter a CD-player for his birthday
4. going to the beach this weekend
5. make sandwiches for your Christmas party
6. I help you carry the bags into the house

Exercise 149

- | | | |
|-----------|------------------|-----------|
| 1. picked | 5. ✓ | 8. helped |
| 2. ✓ | 6. made, brought | 9. ✓ |
| 3. agreed | 7. did | 10. ✓ |
| 4. ✓ | | |

Exercise 150

- | | | |
|----------------|-------------------|---------------|
| 2. would get | 6. will wear | 10. will have |
| 3. began | 7. would stand up | 11. will ask |
| 4. wanted | 8. would call out | 12. invited |
| 5. would spend | 9. returned | |

Exercise 151

- | | | |
|-----------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1 used to | 4 would/used to | 6 will |
| 2 will | 5 used to | 7 would/used to |
| 3 used to | | |

Exercise 152

- | | | |
|----------|----------|----------|
| 2. would | 5. will | 8. would |
| 3. will | 6. would | 9. will |
| 4. would | 7. will | 10. will |

Exercise 153

1. Would you tell me what happened? 2. John tried to open up the lid but it wouldn't come. 3. I would do anything to help him. 4. He said that he would be glad if I would come and stay with him for a few days. 5. He tried to explain but I wouldn't listen to him. 6. 'He didn't agree with me.' 'He wouldn't.' 7. He made two or three attempts to strike his lighter, but it wouldn't work. 8. I asked his wife what was wrong with him, but she wouldn't answer. 9. He would spend most evenings playing chess. 10. He turned off the lamp, but sleep would not come. 11. I wanted to see only one picture but they wouldn't let me in as it was late. 12. I suggested that she should see the doctor, but she wouldn't hear of it. 13. He would often fall asleep with a book in his hands and spectacles on his nose. 14. After work he would wait for us at the bridge. 15. He would walk a dog before going to bed. 16. Would you like to go for a walk tonight? 17. I asked him not to bang the door, but he would do it. 18. If you would wait a little, I'll go and fetch the books.

Exercise 154

1. When we got into the car, he said: "We could go for a drive now. There is a place near here I'd like to show you." 2. Would you like another glass of juice? 3. I'd rather

not tell you what I know about him. 4. I did not really want to go to the party. I would rather have stayed and talked with my parents. 5. He would rather listen to others than talk himself. 6. "I would rather not have come home," she said in a voice trembling with despair. 7. She would rather read the letter first.

Exercise 155

- | | |
|-----------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. we try making some | 5. may leave their cars |
| 2. may not cross | 6. cannot walk |
| 3. you like me to do | 7. needn't have called me |
| 4. don't we have | 8. didn't need to reserve |

Exercise 156

- a) 2 b) 1 c) 3 d) 1 e) 2 f) 1 g) 1 h) 3

Exercise 157

- | | |
|----------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. √ | 6. √ |
| 2. would you like to go | 7. would ('d) like |
| 3. √ | 8. √ |
| 4. would you like to do | 9. would ('d) like |
| 5. would you like to order | 10. would ('d) like |

Exercise 158

1. must have left
2. could do
3. were to have finished/should have finished/ought to have finished
4. might/may have mentioned
5. has had to walk
6. should/ought to take
7. are not allowed to walk/must not walk
8. should/ought to have known
9. are to/must/ought to/should destroy
10. can/may enter
11. need to/would like to/must find out
12. must have been waiting
13. was supposed to take/should have taken
14. will be given
15. Would you mind taking/Would you take
16. weren't allowed to wear
17. should have brought/ought to have brought/could have brought
18. Shall/Can/Could I carry
19. have to/need to have
20. could have rung/might have rung/should have rung/ought to have rung

Exercise 159

2. ... is likely to come to ... 10. ... we go and see ...

3. ... are not allowed to photograph ...
4. ... mustn't touch the statues ...
5. ... can't have cheated ...
6. ... you need to call...
7. ... you like me to carry ...
8. ... can't have done it...
9. ... you mind if I took ...

11. ... don't need to do ...
12. ... should eat less ...
13. ... needn't have taken ...
14. ... must spend all her money ...
15. ... you have to say ...
16. ... must have known what ...
17. ... may/might be busy ...

Exercise 160

- | | | | | |
|---------|-------|--------|---------|----------|
| 1. ✓ | 4. ✓ | 7. am | 10. not | 13. been |
| 2. have | 5. ✓ | 8. can | 11. ✓ | 14. done |
| 3. be | 6. if | 9. ✓ | 12. or | 15. be |

12. Dare

Exercise 162

1. I do not dare to speak to him about his daughter. / I do not dare speak to him ... / I dare not speak to him ...
2. I dare you to tell the teacher the truth.
3. The boys didn't dare to wake the father. / The boys didn't dare wake ... / The boys dared not wake
4. How did you dare to go out by yourself after the orders I gave you. / How dared you go out by yourself
5. I dare you to fight him.
6. I don't dare to reproach her for it. / I don't dare reproach ... / I dare not reproach ...
7. How did he dare to strike me when I was down? / How dared he strike me ... ?
8. I wanted to ask for some time off but I didn't dare. / I wanted to ask for some time off but I dared not.

Exercise 163

1. Harry met Mr. Green yesterday, but he daren't tell/didn't dare (to) tell him that we had smashed the motorcar we borrowed from him.
2. Will you tell Mr. Green that we've smashed his motorcar? I daren't tell him/I don't dare (to) tell him.
3. How dare you speak to me like that?
4. How dare he say such rude things about me?
5. Dare he admit it?
6. Do they dare to suggest that we have been dishonest?
7. He dared me to jump across the stream.
8. I dare anyone to prove that my facts are incorrect.

Reported Speech ■ Modals

Exercise 164

1. ... had to feed ...
2. ... would not have to type ...
3. ... said that Jordan could tell ...
4. ... Helen didn't have to ...

5. ... told me that they might ...
6. ... would be able to ...
7. ... if he could go out ...
8. ... wouldn't have to prepare ...
9. ... said that she must be ...
10. ... would be able to cancel ...

Revision

Exercise 165

- | | | | | | | |
|------|------|------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. A | 4. B | 7. A | 10. A | 13. A | 16. A | 19. A |
| 2. A | 5. C | 8. B | 11. B | 14. B | 17. C | 20. A |
| 3. C | 6. B | 9. A | 12. A | 15. C | 18. A | |

Exercise 166

- | | | | | | | |
|------|------|------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. B | 4. B | 7. B | 10. A | 13. B | 16. C | 19. B |
| 2. A | 5. A | 8. B | 11. C | 14. B | 17. C | 20. B |
| 3. A | 6. | 9. B | 12. C | 15. A | 18. A | |

Exercise 167

2. Couldn't you try to get there a bit earlier?
3. Couldn't you borrow the money from the bank?
4. You could get the information from the local library.
5. Why not take a later train?

Exercise 168

2. It might be a good idea to get started as soon as possible.
3. You might like to write and ask her yourself.
4. What about taking a winter holiday for a change?
5. You could just pay at the end of the month.
6. Let's take a week off in July.
7. What about asking Bill to help?
8. You could ring and tell them you're coming.
9. Couldn't we borrow the equipment from Peter?
10. It might be a good idea to keep quiet about that.

Exercise 169

- | | | | | | | |
|---------|--------|-------|----------|----------|----------|---------|
| 1. to | 4. t | 7. be | 10. will | 13. to | 16. will | 19. had |
| 2. have | 5. had | 8. to | 11. that | 14. to | 17. got | 20. if |
| 3. been | 6. it | 9. is | 12. we | 15. does | 18. to | |

Exercise 170

- | | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1. b | 2. a | 3. b | 4. b | 5. a | 6. b |
|------|------|------|------|------|------|

Exercise 171

1. a 2. b 3. b 4. b 5. a 6. b 7. b 8. a 9. a

Exercise 172

- | | |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| a) I don't believe it. | f) It isn't allowed. |
| b) She always is. | g) It's the rule. |
| c) It's the rule. | h) It's not a good idea. |
| d) if you don't want to. | i) I expect so. |
| e) It's only natural. | j) That's my advice. |

Exercise 173

- | | |
|---------------------|------------------------|
| a) can't have been | f) could have been |
| b) might have given | g) should have bought |
| c) had to see | h) wouldn't go |
| d) might have lost | i) could have helped |
| e) would have been | j) shouldn't have gone |

Exercise 174

1. Can I go out and play? – No, you can't. 2. Can this work have been done in such a short time? 3. Could I use your bicycle? – Yes, you can borrow my bicycle. 4. He can't/couldn't have moved the piano himself. 5. Some tea may/might/could have remained in the teapot. 6. She can't have left this place by land. 7. If we had taken the other road, we might/could have arrived earlier. 8. Your friend might still come, but I don't think he will. 9. You might pay more attention to your lessons. 10. You might have gone to see your sister when she was in trouble. 11. Do you think the plane will be on time? – It may/might/could be delayed. 12. Flowers can be very expensive. 13. I wonder where Tom is. – He may/might/could/can be at the library. 14. Could they be waiting for us? 15. When are you likely to arrive? 16. It may not/might not happen. 17. It can't have happened/couldn't have happened. 18. By next Monday I may/might have finished the work. 19. May I see the chief now? – Yes, you may. – He said I might take his book. 20. Why is he upset? It may/might/could be because he lost his bag. 21. He may/might/could be waiting for us at the station. 22. Do you think the plane will be on time? It may/might/could be delayed. 23. People were allowed to/could start small and medium-sized businesses. 24. When are you likely to arrive? 25. Can/could I help you with the cooking? 26. You can/could take this book if you want. 27. Can I speak to Mary, please?

Exercise 175

- | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 1. b | 3. a | 5. a | 7. a | 9. b |
| 2. b | 4. b | 6. b | 8. b | 10. a |

Exercise 176

- | | | |
|-------------|----------------------|------------------|
| 1. Must | 5. mustn't | 9. mustn't |
| 2. Must | 6. must | 10. needn't have |
| 3. ought to | 7. needn't have done | 11. might |

4. could

8. shouldn't have left

12. mustn't

Exercise 177

Line 6 ~~He'd be visiting~~ → He'll be visiting

Line 8 ~~she won't~~ → she wouldn't

Line 9 would have hastened → would hasten

Line 11 ~~will insist~~ → would insist

Line 12 ~~Won't it be~~ → Wouldn't it be

Line 14 ~~I shan't say~~ → I wouldn't say

Line 16 ~~Will I make~~ → Shall I make

Line 17 ~~would be frozen~~ → will be frozen

Line 18 ~~he's walked~~ → he'll have walked

Exercise 179

1. could, would. 2. ought to, should, could, would. 3. should, might. 4. should, could. 5. could, should. 6. can, must. 7. can, can, can, had better, may. 8. doesn't have to, could. 9. may have to. 10. could, might. 11. could, might. 12. may be able. 13. may have to. 14. should, could. 15. may (might) have to. 16. ought to (should), might.

Exercise 181

1. You should have read your composition once again. There must be some mistakes there. 2. Can it be only six o'clock? 3. You should not have spoken to him like that. He might have felt hurt. 4. He ought to know it. 5. He must have forgotten to tell them (must have told them nothing) and they may be packing. 6. He must have a sense of humour. Otherwise he couldn't have said it like that. 7. Tomorrow is your sister's birthday. I think you should (must) give her a present. 8. It must be raining heavily. The street is deserted. 9. He can't have forgotten his promise. 10. You should have sent them a telegram. They might have arrived by now. 11. I'm sorry I'm late. Did you have to wait long? 12. I didn't go out that evening as George was to come and see me after his work. 13. He had to return to the hotel as his flight was delayed. 14. He knew that he was to attend two meetings next week. 15. She must know nothing about your affairs. 16. She can't know anything about his affairs. 17. I am to take this exam in a week. 18. Will you have to call them again? 19. You don't have to go shopping today as we are dining out. 20. "What are they talking about?" "They may be arguing about the script." 21. The news may (might) frighten her. 22. She knew she must explain everything to them. 23. You ought to make your own living. 24. Their house was to be brought down and he had to move to a new residential area. 25. I hope your wife doesn't have to clean this big house. 26. The weather is very good, and we could go for a drive in the country. 27. I'm sorry but I must be off. I am to meet Betty at the cinema. Oh, it's a quarter to seven. She must be waiting for me. I'll have to take a bus. 28. Could you do it today? 29. Can (may) I go? 30. Why should I walk all the way there? 31. "It's late. Where can Dick be?" "I couldn't care less." 32. You ought to visit your brother in hospital. 33. He might have been taken for an old man. 34. You ought not to blame him for it. It's partly your fault, too. 35. You could (might) tell us what is happening. 36. They may have made their choice. 37. I don't know why

she should not want to speak to them herself. 38. It's surprising that they should have included him into the team. 39. You ought to find a specialist who could deal with the problem. 40. Father says that I must stay with him a little longer.

Exercise 183

1. Shall I go and find out if he has done the work? He was to finish it yesterday.
2. Did you have to wait for him long? 3. You needn't have come. The meeting is cancelled (called off). 4. He was to have finished it all yesterday, but he was called away to London unexpectedly. 5. You ought to have told us about it, now we don't know what we are to (should) do. 6. Everything is settled. Now I don't have to go to London. 7. He must have been unable to give them our message and they may be waiting for us. 8. "Can he have forgotten to book rooms at the hotel for us?" "He must have done it in your name." 9. She can't have been so foolish. 10. Can (may) I go? 11. Could you do it for me? 12. "He was to have come on the five o'clock train. Could he have missed it?" "How should I know?" 13. He must have forgotten to tell them about it and they may not come. 14. You should have told us that you wouldn't be able to play for the team today. 15. Why should you put off till tomorrow what you can (could) do today? 16. I'm to see him on Tuesday night. 17. He might have said something in my favour. 18. She wouldn't explain what was wrong. 19. Unfortunately I could not speak to my father. I didn't catch him at home. I should have come early in the morning. 20. You might have told me you would be late. 21. She must have misunderstood which road she was to take and she may have lost her way. 22. You had to stay there till the end, didn't you? 23. You are wet through. You should have asked someone to give you a lift. 24. I may have to go there by taxi. It ought to be much quicker. 25. "I looked for him everywhere last night. I wanted him to speak at the meeting, too." "You needn't have bothered. He might have ruined everything." 26. I couldn't mark my students' notebooks yesterday because I had to take another teacher's class. 27. I needn't tell you why this must be done without drawing anyone's attention to it. 28. You needn't have gone for the key. The door was open. 29. Last night I saw his wife. She might have been taken for a French woman. 30. Why do you think he should feel so embarrassed? 31. You should take your raincoat. It may rain. 32. The ground is wet. It must have been raining here. 33. You needn't have come. We could have finished it without you. 34. In the evening she was to go to a party. So she had to wash her hair after breakfast. 35. It's strange that he should have left without saying where he was going (has gone). 36. I don't see why you should not be friends. 37. Be careful. You might have fallen down. 38. You shouldn't have called her so late (given her such a late call). 39. It's an unimportant item. You needn't have included it in your account. 40. He said he must be off and left without waiting for her to answer. 41. You needn't come tomorrow. I'll be busy.

Exercise 184

- | | | | |
|------|----------|------|--------|
| 1. C | 4. A,C,D | 6. A | 8. A,B |
| 2. D | 5. A,D | 7. C | 9. D |
| 3. C | | | |

Exercise 185

1. **used to** can complete all three sentences:
 - a. will / would / used to ('will' refers to now (and the foreseeable future) and 'would' and 'used to' refer what happened in the past)
 - b. would / used to
 - c. used to
2. **must** can complete all three sentences:
 - a. should / ought to / must
 - b. must
 - c. should / ought to / must
3. **mustn't** can complete all three sentences:
 - a. mustn't / don't have to/needn't
 - b. mustn't / don't have to /needn't
 - c. Mustn't
4. **must** can complete all three sentences:
 - a. must / have to / need to
 - b. must
 - c. must / have to / need to
5. **could** can complete all three sentences:
 - a. Could/Might ('Might' would be rather formal here.)
 - b. may/might/could
 - c. could
6. **is (or was) able to** can complete all three sentences:
 - a. was able to
 - b. is able to / can
 - c. was able to / could

Exercise 186

- | | |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. ... may not have stolen ... | 9. ... can't have attended ... |
| 2. ... like me to help you ... | 10. ...we meet outside ... |
| 3. ... mind if I used ... | 11. ...don't need/need not wear ... |
| 4. ... needn't have given me ... | 12. ...must not walk ... |
| 5. ... must have prepared ... | 13. ...may be asleep ... |
| 6. ... need to spend ... | 14. ...Julie have to leave ... |
| 7. ... may be going ... | 15. ...will probably move ... |
| 8. ... is likely to accept ... | |

Exercise 187

- | | |
|-----------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. wasn't able to | 16. you are unable to |
| 2. could run faster | 17. can't be |
| 3. I'll be able to | 18. is bound to be |
| 4. didn't have to go | 19. are to report |
| 5. I'll have to | 20. ought to know |
| 6. us we had to pay | 21. needn't have gone out |
| 7. needn't have taken | 22. was to have become |

8. us we couldn't
9. don't need to/needn't
10. had to wear/had to put on/had to use/had to have
11. had better give up
12. should be there by/should get there by
13. I have to bring
14. must be
15. have to have/have to use

23. shouldn't have brought
24. can't have
25. may have seen
26. must have been
27. might not have meant
28. could have left
29. shouldn't have sold
30. had to

Exercise 188

1. ... must have lost ...
2. ... may phone us ...
3. ... can't have been living ...
4. ... must have spent ...
5. ... can't be seeing ...
6. ... may/might be feeling ...
7. ... can't have been driving
8. ... may/might have left
9. ... must be considering ...
10. ... may have rented ...
11. ... must not feel ...
12. ... don't have to cut ...
13. ... must not take dogs ...
14. ... needn't dust ...
15. ... must not run ...
16. ... don't have to wear ...
17. ... needn't have taken ...
18. ... didn't need to take ...
19. ... needn't have bought ...
20. ... didn't have to iron ...
21. ... don't need to have ...
22. ... didn't have to accept ...
23. ... may/might need ...
24. ... could go to Canada ...
25. ... you like me to get ...

26. ... is likely to go ...
27. ... needn't have bought ...
28. ... must not smoke ...
29. ... had better change ...
30. ... should have warned me ...
31. ... don't need to attend/needn't attend
32. ... about going to ...
33. ... must be seeing ...
34. ... don't have to come ...
35. ... can't have sent you ...
36. ... you mind if I read ...
37. ... can't have been lying ...
38. ... likely that she will fail ...
39. ... must not talk to ...
40. ... needn't have given me ...
41. ... may/might have gone ...
42. ... you like me to help ...
43. ... may have got caught ...
44. ... keep (on) practising...
45. ... needn't have bought ...
46. ... likely to come ...
47. ... should have told us ...
48. ... didn't have to go ...
49. ... don't need to make ...
50. ... are not allowed to leave ...

REFERENCE LIST

- 1 Блинова, С. И. Практика английского языка. Модальные глаголы : сборник упражнений / С. И. Блинова, Е. И. Сеницкая, Г. С. Чернышева. – СПб. : Лениздат. Издательство «Союз», 2002. – 191 с.
- 2 Каушанская, В. Л. Грамматика английского языка : пособие для студентов педагогических институтов / В. Л. Каушанская [и др.] ; под ред. проф. Б. А. Ильиша. – Ленинград : «Просвещение», 1967. – 319 с.
- 3 Кобрина, Н. А. Грамматика английского языка. Морфология : учебное пособие для студентов педагогических институтов / Н. А. Кобрина. – М. : «Просвещение», 1985. – 288 с.
- 4 Крылова, И. П. Сборник упражнений по грамматике английского языка : учебное пособие для студентов институтов и факультетов иностранных языков / И. П. Крылова. – Москва, Высш. школа, 1978. – 239 с.
- 5 Практический курс английского языка. 2 курс : учеб. для пед. вузов / В. Д. Аракин [и др.] ; под ред. В. Д. Аракина. – М. : ВЛАДОС, 2005. – 513 с.
- 6 Alexander, L. G. Longman English Grammar: English Grammar – Text-book for foreign speakers / L. G. Alexander. Consultant : R. A. Close, CBE. – Longman, 2002. – 374 с.
- 7 Evans, Virginia. Enterprise 4 : Grammar / Virginia Evans, Jenny Dooley. – Express Publishing, 2002. – 159 с.
- 8 Foley, M. Advanced Learners' Grammar: A self-study reference and practice book / Mark Foley, Diane Hall. – Longman, 2005. – 384 p.
- 9 Gordon, E.M. A Grammar of Present-Day English. (Parts of Speech) / E.M. Gordon, I.P. Krylova. – Moscow, Higher School Publishing House, 1974. – 332 p.
- 10 Hashemi, L. English Grammar in Use : Supplementary Exercises / Louise Hashemi with Raymond Murphy. – Cambridge University Press, 1996. – 126 p.
- 11 Hewings, M. Advanced Grammar in Use : A self-study reference and practice book for advanced learners of English / Martin Hewings. – Cambridge University Press, 1999. – 340 p.
- 12 Murphy, R. English Grammar in Use : A self-study reference and practice book for Intermediate Students / Raymond Murphy. – Cambridge University Press, 1995. – 350 p.
- 13 Vince, M. Advanced Language Practice : Heinemann English Language Teaching / M. Vince. – Oxford, 1994. – 262 p.
- 14 Vince, M. First Certificate Language Practice : FCE Grammar explained / M. Vince. – Oxford, 1996. – 279 p.
- 15 Willis, D. Collins Cobuild Student's Grammar : Self-study edition / Dave Willis. – The University of Birmingham, Harper Collins Publishers, 1995. – 263 p.

CONTENTS

Modal Verbs

Summary of Functions of Modal Verbs

- 1. Can;** exercises
- 2. May;** exercises
- 3. Must;** exercises
- 4. Should;** exercises
- 5. Ought to;** exercises
- 6. To have to;** exercises
- 7. To be to;** exercises
- 8. Need;** exercises
- 9. Shall;** exercises
- 10. Will;** exercises
- 11. Would;** exercises
- 12. Dare;** exercises

Reported Speech ■ Modals

Revision; exercises

Учебное издание

Лисицина Надежда Ивановна

ГРАММАТИКА
АНГЛИЙСКОГО ЯЗЫКА

МОДАЛЬНЫЕ ГЛАГОЛЫ

Учебное пособие

Ответственный за выпуск:
Технический редактор:

Подписано в печать:
Тираж:
Печать: трафаретная
Бумага: офсетная

Заказ:
Формат:
Усл.печ.л.:
Уч.-изд.л.:

Издательство Томского государственного
педагогического университета
Отпечатано в типографии ТГПУ
634041, Томск, ул. Герцена, 49. Тел.(3822) 52-12-93.